

4
E

561

FT MEADE
GenColl

THE
FIRST BOOK
OF
HISTORY.



FOR CHILDREN AND YOUTH.

BY THE AUTHOR OF PETER PARLEY'S TALES.

WITH SIXTY ENGRAVINGS AND SIXTEEN M. S.

KEY, MEILKE, & BIDDLE, PHILADELPHIA;
RICHARDSON, LORD, & HOLBROOK, BOSTON.

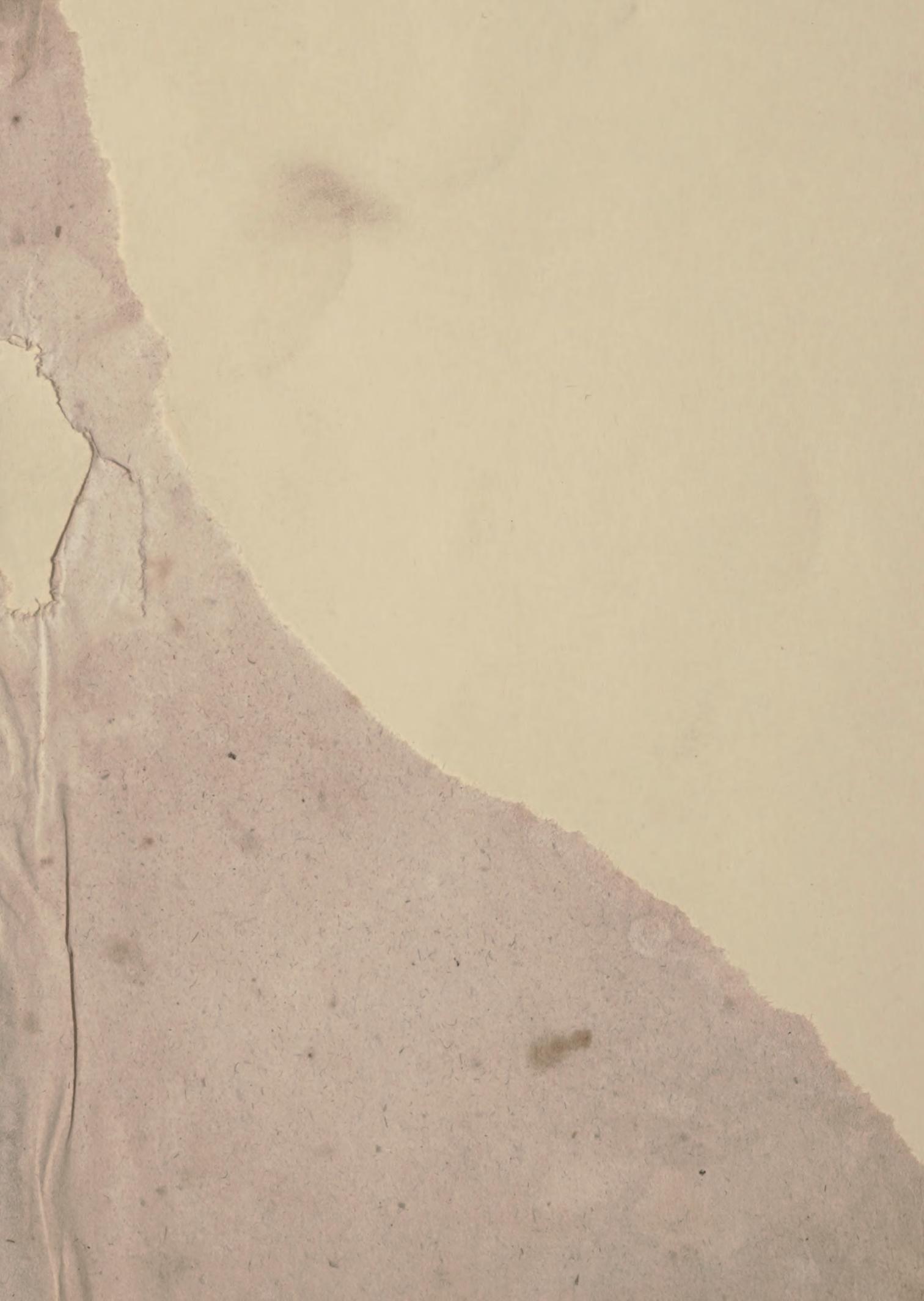
1832.



Class _____

Book _____

PRESENTED BY







PICTURE OF THE NEW WORLD.



DISCOVERED BY COLUMBUS OCTOBER 11, 1492.

THE
FIRST BOOK
OF
HISTORY.



FOR CHILDREN AND YOUTH.

BY THE AUTHOR OF PETER PARLEY'S TALES.

WITH SIXTY ENGRAVINGS AND SIXTEEN MAPS.

PHILADELPHIA: KEY, MEILKE, AND BIDDLE;

BOSTON: RICHARDSON, LORD, & HOLBROOK.

1832.

4-E
561

RICHARDSON, LORD AND HOLBROOK

WILL SOON PUBLISH,

A SECOND BOOK OF HISTORY, including the History and Geography of the various countries of Europe, Africa and Asia, with 16 maps and numerous engravings, by the same Author, and designed to follow this FIRST BOOK OF HISTORY.

Also,

PETER PARLEY'S HISTORY OF ANCIENT AND MODERN GREECE.

And

PETER PARLEY'S HISTORY OF ANCIENT ROME, with an ACCOUNT OF MODERN ITALY, with maps and many engravings.

*Gift
Mrs. A. C. Fulsizer
and Mrs. F. W. Powell*

Aug. 22. '36



ENTERED according to ACT OF CONGRESS, in the year 1831, by SAMUEL G. GOODRICH,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

P R E F A C E.

AMONG the multitude of books for juvenile instruction, there are not a few of an historical nature; but it is remarkable that History is not an universal, nor even a general study in our common schools. This cannot arise from any want of adaptation in the subject itself, to the purposes of instruction; on the contrary, it is manifest that it is peculiarly adapted to these purposes. We do not mean to say this of history as it has been generally treated; for most school books of this kind are but little more than extended chronological tables, and offer nothing to the reader but a tedious mass of dates, and general observations. Such works may be useful to people of mature age, but they neither amuse, nor instruct the class of readers, for whom they are designed. But of all reading, there is none that so readily attracts the attention, and lays hold of the sympathy of children and youth, as lively narratives of the enterprises, adventures, dangers, trials, successes and failures of mankind, and these it is the business of History to display. Books which treat of the works of nature and art, which exhibit geographical details, observations upon natural history, and natural philosophy—any, or all of these will be immediately thrown aside by a child left to his choice, for a book of stories, delineating events, in connexion with the developement of human passions.

If then history, when properly treated, is one of the most attractive of all studies, why is it not regularly taught in all our schools? It is not because it is deemed less useful than other studies; “the proper study of mankind is man,” and it cannot be entered upon too soon. After possessing a knowledge of religion, and the duties we owe to God and our neighbour, history is the most important of all studies. It relates to us what has been done by mankind, and thus teaches us what they may do. It acquaints us with the true character of our race, and enables us to know ourselves better. It apprizes us of the existence of evil, and the way to shun it; it acquaints us with the existence of good, and shows us how to attain it.

It cannot be, therefore, that the limited use of history in our schools, is owing to an idea that it is useless. The fact must arise from the want of historical books, written in a style which shall render them both interesting and profitable. Such at least is the conviction of the author of this volume; and believing that a first book of History for general use in our schools is much to be desired, he has undertaken, and now offers to the public, the present volume.

In preparing it, two things have been had in view. In the first place it should be useful; and in the second place to make it useful it must be entertaining. To accomplish these ends, the book is provided with maps, and before the pupil enters upon the history of any state or country, he is to learn from them, its shape, boundaries, rivers, shores, &c. He is then briefly made acquainted with its present state, its towns, and cities, and the occupations of its inhabitants. These geographical details are conveyed to the pupil, by narrating supposed travels through various countries, in which he takes a part.

The pupil, being thus acquainted with the present condition of a country, is then told its history. The author has been careful to introduce precise dates, for without

them, it would be impossible to give any distinct view of any portion of history. But he has sought more assiduously to select from the great mass of events, those topics which would be most calculated to please and to improve the young reader. He has introduced many tales, anecdotes, adventures, and curious particulars, for the double purpose of enlivening the book, and throwing light upon the periods and events with which they are connected. A large number of engravings have been inserted as well for illustration, as for fixing certain ideas permanently in the memory of the pupil.

A familiar style has been adopted, and the materials throughout are arranged on a new plan. The common method is to begin at the earliest date, and follow down the train of events to the present time. The author of this work has partially reversed this method. He begins with the individual states of our own country, and first exhibits their present condition. He then notices a few recent events, and having fixed the attention of the reader upon the subject, proceeds to detail its history. Avoiding general statements, he has endeavoured to keep the attention and interest of the pupil alive, by descriptions, sketches, and tales, which may at once gratify the taste, and improve the understanding.

It will be observed, that although the book contains a large quantity of matter, yet it only embraces the history of the Western Continent. It is believed that it will be more useful, than if it contained the history of the Eastern Continent, also, in the same number of pages. In proportion as a work is condensed, it becomes general, and of course uninteresting to children. It was deemed preferable, therefore, to give an ample history of our own Hemisphere, and if the plan should be approved, a second volume, embracing the history of the Eastern Hemisphere, will be published.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

THE author would respectfully suggest, that this volume be put into the hands of pupils, of from nine to sixteen years of age. It is not perhaps essential, but it would be better, that they should have passed through some small work on geography. The teacher is of course at liberty to reject the questions on the chapters inserted throughout the work, and to frame such interrogations for exercising the pupil, as he chooses. It is recommended even if they are used, that they be not strictly adhered to; the teacher's knowledge of the character of his pupils, will often suggest to him more apt and appropriate interrogations, than could be framed without that knowledge. At the end of the work is a chronological table, which the author deems important, and he recommends that it be thoroughly riveted in the memory of the pupil, before he is allowed to quit the study. It is also recommended that the pupil in his progress through the work be required to tell the length, and average width, of each of the countries found on the maps; these may be ascertained with sufficient accuracy by applying the scale of miles. In this and some other parts of his studies the pupil may need the aid of the teacher.

CONTENTS.

<p>CHAP. 1.—State of Maine. Geography. Trade. Fairs. Trees. Moose. 9</p> <p>CHAP. 2.—Maine continued. Indian Old Town. Penobscot Tribe. History. Settlement in Maine. Story of the Norridgewock Tribe. History of Maine. 10</p> <p>CHAP. 3.—State of New Hampshire. Isles of Shoals. Sea Serpent. Geography of the State. 12</p> <p>C. 4.—New Hampshire continued. The Notch. Slide. History. Attack on Dover. 13</p> <p>C. 5.—State of Vermont. Geography. Salmon. Windsor. Green Mountains. Towns. 15</p> <p>C. 6.—Vermont continued. Inundation. Battle on Lake Champlain. Of Bennington. Settlement. 16</p> <p>C. 7.—State of Massachusetts. Commerce. Agriculture. Manufactures. Boston. Towns. 18</p> <p>C. 8.—Massachusetts continued. Centennial Celebration. Settlement of Boston. Settlement of Plymouth. Other Settlements. History. 19</p> <p>C. 9.—State of Rhode Island. Towns. Settlement of Rhode Island. History. 21</p> <p>C. 10.—State of Connecticut. Description. Norwich Indians. New London. Anecdote. Hartford. New Haven. Other Towns. People. 22</p> <p>C. 11.—Connecticut continued. Hermitess. Charter Oak. History. Story of Mr. Chester. 24</p> <p>C. 12.—New England. Climate. Connecticut River. School-houses. Churches. Towns. 26</p> <p>C. 13.—New England continued. The Puritans. Settlement of Plymouth. Samoset. Massasoit. Anecdote. Other Settlers. Settlement of Boston. Dorchester and Salem. 28</p> <p>C. 14.—New England continued. Sir Henry Vane. Ann Hutchinson. Indians. Capture of Mystic. 30</p> <p>C. 15.—New England continued. Hatred of the Indians. Philip excites them to War. 31</p> <p>C. 16.—New England continued. Springfield burnt. Slaughter at Muddy Brook. War in Maine. New Hampshire. Attack on Brookfield. The Narragansetts. Death of Philip. 33</p> <p>C. 17.—New England continued. Charters of the Colonies taken away. Andross imprisoned, and sent to England. Supposed Witchcraft at Salem. 35</p> <p>C. 18.—New England continued. War between England and France. Attack on Haverhill. Story of Mr. Dunstan. Mrs. Dunstan. Queen Anne's War. Attack on Deerfield. Port Royal taken. 37</p> <p>C. 19.—New England continued. Indian War in Maine. King George's War. Capture of Louisburg. 39</p> <p>C. 20.—The Puritans. Their Character. Object in coming to America. Persecution of the Baptists. 41</p> <p>C. 21.—Puritans continued. Persecution of the Quakers. Reflexions. Sketches. 42</p> <p>C. 22.—State of New York. Geographical Description. City of New York. Passage up the Hudson. 45</p> <p>C. 23.—New York continued. Albany. Utica. Trenton Falls. Indians. Niagara Falls. Stories. 47</p> <p>C. 24.—New York continued. Erie Canal. Settlement of New York. War with the Indians. Another War. Surrender to the Duke of York. 49</p> <p>C. 25.—New York continued. The Five Nations. 51</p> <p>C. 26.—New York continued. Burning of Schenectady. Gov. Slaughter. Exploits of Peter Scudder. 52</p> <p>C. 27.—New York continued. Pirates. Robert Kidd. Persecution of the Negroes. Peace of 1747. 54</p> <p>C. 28.—State of New Jersey. Travels. Orchards. Joseph Bonaparte. History. Settlements. Division</p>	<p>9</p> <p>10</p> <p>12</p> <p>13</p> <p>15</p> <p>16</p> <p>18</p> <p>19</p> <p>21</p> <p>22</p> <p>24</p> <p>26</p> <p>28</p> <p>30</p> <p>31</p> <p>33</p> <p>35</p> <p>37</p> <p>39</p> <p>41</p> <p>42</p> <p>45</p> <p>47</p> <p>49</p> <p>51</p> <p>52</p> <p>54</p>	<p>into East and West Jersey. Battle of Monmouth. 50</p> <p>C. 29.—State of Pennsylvania. Philadelphia. Fairmount Water Works. Travels. Roads. Bridges. Quakers. Germans. Alleghany Mountains. Pittsburg. Coal-Mines. Canals. Rivers. Climate. 53</p> <p>C. 30.—Pennsylvania continued. History. Wm. Penn. Settlement. Penn comes to America. Founds Philadelphia. Returns to England. Rapid Settlement of Pennsylvania. Penn again visits his Colony. Death of Penn. Character. Indians. 59</p> <p>C. 31.—State of Delaware. Situation. Travels. Break-water. Revolutionary War. Delaware Regiment. Settlement of Delaware. Paradise Point. Indians. Governor Risingh. Peter Stuyvesan. Capture of the Dutch. History. 61</p> <p>C. 32.—State of Maryland. Travels. Negro Slaves. Slavery. Wheat Field. Tobacco. Baltimore. 63</p> <p>C. 33.—Maryland continued. North Point. Battle. Attack on Washington. Baltimore. Catholics. Lord Baltimore. Settlement of Maryland. Indian villages. Situation of the Colonists. Death of Lord Baltimore. His Character. History. 64</p> <p>C. 34.—Middle States. General View. History. 66</p> <p>C. 35.—State of Virginia. Travels. Plantations. Slaves. Planters. Climate. Face of the Country. Natural Curiosities. Richmond. Norfolk. 67</p> <p>C. 36.—Virginia continued. Monticello. Jefferson. Mt. Vernon. Washington. Jamestown. Indians. Spaniards. Cheseapeake Bay. Indian Chiefs. Settlement on James River. John Smith. His Adventures. Conduct. Powhatan. Pocahontas. 68</p> <p>C. 37.—Virginia continued. State of the Colony under Smith's Government. The Colonists dig for Gold. Reflexions. Smith chosen President. Conduct of Smith. Pocahontas. Smith goes to England. Misery of the Colonists. Lord Delaware. 71</p> <p>C. 38.—Virginia continued. The Colony flourishes. Capt. Argal. Marriage of Pocahontas. Death. Slaves. Opecananough. Slaughter of the Colonists. Vengeance of the English. History. 73</p> <p>C. 39.—State of North Carolina. Travels. Slaves. Plantations. Forests. Towns. Tobacco. Rice. Cotton. Settlement by Episcopalians. Situation of the Colony. Other Settlers. Religion. Government. Charleston. Indians. Colonel Barnwell. Col. Moore. Six Nations. History. 74</p> <p>C. 40.—State of South Carolina. Charleston. Planters. Slaves. Trade of Charleston. History. 77</p> <p>C. 41.—State of Georgia. Face of the Country. Savannah. Trade. Augusta. Milledgeville. Indiana. Okefenoko Swamp. Settlement of Georgia. Situation of the Colony. War with Spain. 78</p> <p>C. 42.—The four southern Atlantic States. General View. Slaves. Sale of Slaves. Liberia. 81</p> <p>C. 43.—Alabama. Mississippi and Louisiana. Soil and Productions of Alabama. History. Mississippi. Forests. Alligators. Natchez. Cotton. Sugar-cane. New Orleans. Battle of New Orleans. Settlement at Iberville. History. 82</p> <p>C. 44.—The Western States. General View. Travels. Cincinnati. State of Ohio. Indiana and Illinois. Missouri. Lead Mines. Prairies. St. Louis. Hunters. Tennessee and Kentucky. 85</p> <p>C. 45.—Western States continued. Origin of the name of Tennessee. History. Settlement. Kentucky. Daniel Boone. Revolutionary War</p>	<p>50</p> <p>53</p> <p>59</p> <p>61</p> <p>63</p> <p>64</p> <p>66</p> <p>67</p> <p>68</p> <p>71</p> <p>73</p> <p>74</p> <p>77</p> <p>78</p> <p>81</p> <p>82</p> <p>85</p>
---	--	--	---

Flourishing State of the Colony. History of Ohio. Settlement. Emigration. Suffering in 1816. Prosperity of Ohio. History of Indiana and Illinois. Settlement of Missouri. History. Slavery.	87	cans. Temples. Montezuma taken Prisoner Governor of Cuba. Narvaez. Spaniards Assaulted by the Mexicans. Death of Montezuma. Night of Desolation. Retreat of the Spaniards.	137
C. 46.—The six Territories. Geography. History.	89	C. 66.—Mexico continued. Quetlivaca. Guatimozin. Attack on Temuchtitan. Torture of Guamozin and his Minister. Government of Mexico. City of Mexico. Fate of Cortez. History.	140
C. 47.—The United States. Divisions. Valley of the Mississippi. City of Washington. Capitol. Presidents. Government. American Revolution.	94	C. 67.—Guatemala. Mountains. Mahogany and Logwood. City of Guatemala. Other Towns. Government. History. Mosquito Indians. History.	142
C. 48.—The French War. Colonies. French. English. George Washington. Governor Dinwiddie. Fort du Quesne. General Braddock. Attack of the Indians. Death of Braddock. Expedition against Fort Niagara. Crown Point.	97	C. 68.—Colombia. Country. Climate. Elevation of Quito and Santa Fe. The Andes. Plains. Mines.	144
C. 49.—French War continued. England and France declare War. Capture of Fort William Henry. Louisburg. Fort du Quesne. Ticonderoga. Death of Lord Howe. Capture of Fort Frontenac. Quebec. General Wolfe. Montcalm. Death of Wolfe. Montreal taken.	99	C. 69.—Colombia continued. Pizarro. The Moscas. Venezuela. Germany. Spaniards. Gen. Miranda. Buonaparte. Caraccas. Conflicts in New Grenada. Earthquake. Bolivar. Republic of Colombia. Independence. Death of Bolivar.	146
C. 50.—The Revolution. Parliament of Great Britain. People of America. Gen. Gage. Quarrels.	103	C. 70.—Peru. Division. Lima. Callao. Mines. Cusco. Francis Pizarro. Expedition against Peru.	148
C. 51.—Revolution continued. Tax on Tea. New Laws. Cargoes of Tea destroyed. Port Bill passed. Town Meetings. Anecdote.	105	C. 71.—Peru continued. Second Expedition to Peru. Foundation of the Empire. Reception of the Spaniards. The Inca. Procession. Slaughter of the Peruvians. Atahualpa taken Prisoner.	150
C. 52.—Revolution continued. State of the Country. Gen. Gage. Battle of Lexington. Excitement of the People. Stories.	108	C. 72.—Peru continued. Treatment of the Inca. His Death. Paula. Quito taken. Conquest of Peru. Lima founded. Death of Pizarro. History. Bolivar. Constitution formed.	152
C. 53.—Revolution continued. State of the Country. Power of England. Revolution of the Americans. Ticonderoga. Crown Point. Battle of Bunker Hill.	110	C. 73.—Bolivia. Andes. Mines. Potosi. Discovery of the Mines. Other Towns. Peru.	154
C. 54.—Revolution continued. Continental Congress. Declaration of Independence. Washington crosses the Delaware. Gen. Howe. Gen. Burgoyne. Battle of Saratoga. Surrender of Burgoyne.	112	C. 74.—Chili. Travels. Vineyards. Andes. St. Jago. Araucanians. Death of Valdivia. History. Juan Fernandes. Alexander Selkirk.	151
C. 55.—Revolution continued. Government of France. Great Britain. Joseph Reed. Battle of Monmouth. Destruction of Wyoming.	114	C. 75.—Patagonia. Country. Inhabitants. Huts. Ostriches. Terra del Fuego. People. Discovery of Patagonia. People. Straits of Magellan.	156
C. 56.—Revolution continued. Gen. Sullivan. Indians. Count Rochambeau. Benedict Arnold. Story of Major Andre. North and South Carolina. Washington. Surrender of Lord Cornwallis.	116	C. 76.—United Provinces. Travels. Islands near Cape Horn. Travelling. Anecdotes. Wild Animals. Condors. Pampas. Buenos Ayres. Face of the Country. Soil. Towns. People. Discovery of Indians. Jesuits. History. Government.	157
C. 57.—United States after the Revolution. Washington chosen President. His Death. Character. Influence of his Example. La Fayette. Reflexions. John Adams. Columbia. Thomas Jefferson. James Madison. Naval Battles. James Munroe. John Quincy Adams. Gen. Jackson.	118	C. 77.—Brazil. Travels. Rio Janeiro. Harbor. People. Emperor. Extent of Brazil. Population. Indians. Animals. Vegetation. Discovery. Landing of Cabral. St. Salvador. The Dutch. History. Royal Family of Portugal. Government.	160
C. 58.—British Possessions in North America. Division. Steamboats. Lakes Huron and Superior. Hunters. Montreal. St. Lawrence. Quebec. Newfoundland. Inhabitants. Climate. People of Canada. History. Object of the Settlers.	122	C. 78.—Guiana. Division. Country. Climate. Settlers. Indians. Interior Story of Capt. Waterton. Discovery of G. by Vasco Nunes. Sir Walter Raleigh. El Dorado. Settlers in Dutch Guiana. History. Other Settlers in Guiana.	162
C. 59.—The Esquimaux. Country inhabited by the Esquimaux. Dogs. Rein-deer. Origin.	124	C. 79.—West Indies. Vessels. Havana. Ships. Trade. Fruit. Climate. Cuba. Slaves. Discovery of Cuba. Don Jago de Velasquez. Indians. History of C. Hayti. Foundation of St. Domingo. Columbus. Anecdote. History of H. Disturbances Christophe. Independence of H. Government Porto Rico. Jamaica. Discovery. History.	165
C. 60.—Greenland. Whaling Voyage. Islands of Ice. Whales. White Bears. Description of the Greenlanders. Navigators. Animals. Settlement.	125	C. 80.—West Indies continued. Inhabitants. Spaniards. Priests. Bahamas. Cat Island. Caribbee Islands. Discovery. History. Caribs.	168
C. 61.—Iceland. Face of the Country. Proverb. People. Occupations. Habits. Mt. Hecla. Skaptar Yokul. Description of an Eruption. Aurora Borealis. Discovery. Settlement. History.	127	C. 81.—The Buccaneers. Origin. Fame. Pierre le Grand. Boldness of the Buccaneers. Morgan. Bartholomew. His Adventures.	170
C. 62.—Mexico. Voyage to Mexico. Vera Cruz. Travelling. City of Mexico. Catholic Priests. Cathedral. Country of Mexico. Mines. Population. Santa Fe. Mules. People. Caravans.	129	C. 82.—Columbus. Pirates. Youth of Columbus. Adventures. Portuguese Sailors. Passage to India. Thoughts of Columbus. Government of Genoa. Ferdinand and Isabella. He sets sail.	172
C. 63.—Mexico continued. People. Indians. Tenuchtitan. Spaniards. Cortez. Capture of Tabasco. Indian Attack. Defeat of the Indians. Treaty of Peace. Mexican Warriors.	132	C. 83.—Columbus continued. First Voyage on the Ocean. Discovery of Land. Landing. Natives. Country. Cuba. Hayti. Return to Spain. Procession. Other Voyages.	173
C. 64.—Mexico continued. Colony founded at Vera Cruz. Message from Montezuma. Cortez sets out for Tenuchtitan. Ilascala. Slaughter at Cholula. Tenuchtitan. Cortez and Montezuma.	134	C. 84.—General View.	173
C. 65.—Mexico continued. Religion of the Mexi-		Chronological Index.	179

THE CHILD'S
FIRST BOOK OF HISTORY.

CHAP. I.

STATE OF MAINE.

1. The State of Maine is nearly as extensive as all the rest of New England, but a great part of it is still covered with forests. You will observe on the map, that nearly all the towns and villages lie in the southern portion, toward the sea-board.

2. There are a great many lakes in this State, which abound in fish. There are a multitude of streams and rivers; these afford many excellent mill-seats. There are a great many bays, rivulets, and islands along the shore.

3. If you were to go to Maine in the summer, you would see many things to delight you. The little green islands

scattered along the coast, are very beautiful; some of them have very handsome houses upon them. You would find the Kennebec to be a large river, with many handsome villages upon its banks.

4. You would see a great many deep forests, and several pleasant towns. At Gardiner you would see one of the prettiest churches in New England; and Portland you would find to be a large town, almost equal to Providence, or Salem.

5. In travelling through Maine, you would not see many manufactories, but you would meet with a great many saw-

Questions on the Map of Maine.—How is Maine bounded on the North? East? South? West? Describe the Penobscot river; that is, tell in what county it rises, in what direction it runs, through what counties it flows, and into what sea it enters. Describe the Kennebec in the same way. The Androscoggin, Saco, St Croix.

Describe Moosehead Lake; that is, tell what county it is in, and which way it lies from Augusta, the capital of the State. Describe Grand Lake, Schoodic, Sebago, Timiscouala.

Describe the following bays; that is, tell in which direction they are from Augusta the capital, and what sea or ocean they are formed by: Penobscot, Casco, Frenchman's.

Describe the following islands, by telling in what waters they lie, and their direction from the capital: Grand Manan Island, Mt Desert, Deer, Fox, Boon.

How many counties in Maine? Their names? Capital of Maine? In what county is Augusta? Describe the following towns, by telling what county each is in, and its direction from the capital. Portland, Wiscasset, Cornish, Bangor, Norridgewock, Castine, Paris, York, Machias, Bath. What is the number of inhabitants in Maine? Number of square miles? Greatest length of Maine? Greatest width, and average length? Average width?

Questions on Chapter I.—1. How extensive is Maine? Which part of this State is most settled? 2. What of lakes in Maine? Other waters? What objects along the shore? 3. If you were to go to Maine in summer, what would you see along the coast? What of the Kennebec? 4. What other things would you see? 5. Are there many manufactories in Maine? What of saw-mills? What

mills, employed in sawing logs into boards and planks. You would see many of the men cutting down trees in the woods; and at Bangor, Portland, Wiscasset, and other places, you would notice a great many vessels; some of them loaded with lumber, and some with fire-wood.

6. If you were to ask some person where these vessels were going, he would tell you that some of them are bound to Boston, some to New York, some to Charleston, and some to other places. The fire-wood is carried chiefly to Boston; the lumber is carried to almost all the sea-ports of the United States, and the West Indies.

7. You would observe also in Maine, some very good farms; you would see a great many fields planted with corn, or sown with wheat and rye, where the ground is almost covered with stumps. If you were to inquire of the owner, he would tell you, that ten or fifteen years ago, his whole farm was covered with thick forests. The trees have been cut down, one by one, and the land, by patient labor, has been changed from a wilderness into meadows and wheat fields.

8. If you should happen to be in Maine in the winter, you would find the snow very deep, and the air exceedingly cold. It would be well while you are travelling, to cover your ears with fur, and take care to be well wrapped up, or your face and fingers would freeze. Perhaps you will meet with people cutting blocks of ice from the rivers, which they are going to send to Charleston, New Orleans, the West Indies, and other hot countries, to be used in summer

may be seen at Bangor and other places? 6. Where are the wood and lumber of Maine carried? 7. What of farms and farming in Maine? 8.

9. If you should chance to be in the northern, or middle parts of the State, you might have an opportunity of seeing the Indians kill a moose. This is the largest animal of the deer kind. These animals are found in no part of the United States except Maine, and



Indians Hunting a Moose.

even there they are scarce. They were once common in all the northern parts of New England.

CHAP. II.

MAINE.—CONTINUED.

1. In Penobscot river, 40 miles from the mouth, there is a little island, called Indian Old Town. If you go there, you will see about three hundred Indians. They live in small houses, or huts built of sticks and boards, and cultivate the land, catch fish, and hunt wild animals. They are the remains of a great tribe of Indians, that once inhabited a large extent of country in Maine.

2. You will observe among the Indians, one man, whom they call Chief. If you ask him to tell you the story of the Penobscot tribe, he will inform you, that there were once many thousands

What of the winter in Maine? 9. What of the Moose? What does the picture represent?

1. What of the Penobscot Indians? 2. What

of them. They, with other Indians, many years ago, possessed all the lands in Maine.



Penobscot Chief telling of his Tribe.

3. There were then no white men there; there were none but Indians. There were no towns and no villages, except small collections of Indian huts, called wigwams. The Indians did not cut down the trees; they had no horses, and they had no tame animals of any kind.

4. The whole country, far and wide, was covered with forests. In these forests there were a great many bears, panthers, wild-cats, wolves, deer, moose, foxes, rabbits, beavers, and other animals. The Indians then did not cultivate the land, except perhaps that they raised a little corn, and a few pumpkins. They lived almost entirely upon the wild animals, which they killed with their bows and arrows.

5. But at length, some white men came, and they began to cut down the trees, and build houses. Pretty soon they erected saw-mills, and then they cleared the land, and raised wheat, and rye, and corn. And at length more

would the Indian chief tell you? What does the picture represent? 3. What was the state of the country before the white people came? 4. What wild animals were there in the woods? How did the Indians live? 5. What happened

white people came, and they built more houses, and cut down more trees, and cultivated more land.

6. And so the white men increased, and they spread their towns and villages over the land. And the Indians went away, or they died; for their forests were cut down, and they could not live with the white people. Thus the Penobscot tribe, which once contained many thousands, consists now of three hundred Indians only. Other tribes, once numerous and powerful, are now extinct. Such would be the story that the Indian chief would tell you, and it would be all true.

7. As early as the year 1607, about one hundred English people came to Maine, and began a settlement at the mouth of the river Kennebec. The greater part were soon discouraged, and fifty-five returned in the vessel that brought them over.

8. There were at this time none but Indians in all New England, except the white people I am speaking of. These were pretty well treated by the natives; but they found the winter excessively severe, and the next year they all returned to England in a vessel that came to bring them provisions.

9. The Norridgewock tribe of Indians preserved, for many years, a story about these settlers, which I will tell you. The white people were jealous of the Indians, and wished to get rid of them. So they one day employed a large number of them to take hold of a rope, and draw a cannon into the fort. When a great many had taken hold and the rope was drawn in a straight line,

when the white people came? 6. What became of the Indians? What is the present number of the Penobscot tribe? 7. What of the settlement attempted in 1607? 8. What did the settlers finally do? 9. What story used to be told by

then the white people fired the cannon and killed all the Indians. This is the story; if it is true, the white people behaved very wickedly.

10. It was in the year 1628, about two hundred years ago, that the first white men settled permanently in Maine. This settlement was made on the Kennebec, and several houses were built.

11. More white people went from Massachusetts, and other places, and settled in various parts of Maine. In 1651, Maine was attached to Massachusetts, and continued to be so till the year 1820, when it became an independent State. It has now a governor, and a legislature of its own; they meet once a year, at Augusta, and there they make laws for the State.

12. Maine is rapidly advancing in population and improvement. In 1820, the number of inhabitants was only 300,000; in 1830, it was about 400,000. If it continues to increase with the same rapidity, it will soon be a powerful section of the country.

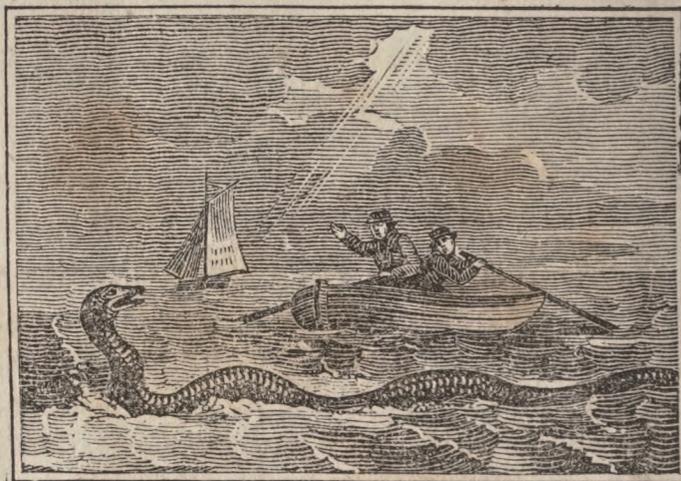
CHAP. III.

STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. There are many things in New Hampshire that are very interesting. About eleven miles to the east of Portsmouth, are some islands, called the Isles of Shoals. The largest belongs to New Hampshire; it is called Staten Island, and on it is a little town called Gosport. The people are all fishermen, and are occupied chiefly in catching cod-fish.

the Norridgewock Indians? 10. When was the first permanent settlement made in Maine by white people? 11. When was Maine attached to Massachusetts? When did Maine become an independent State? Where does the Legislature of Maine meet? 12. What can you say of the increase of Maine?

2. These cod-fish are caught with hooks and lines. They are then carried ashore, and dried upon the rocks. A sea-serpent was seen by several people near these islands, a short time ago. He came so near to a boat, that a man who was in it, could have struck him with an oar. His color was nearly black; he was larger round than the body of a man, and he seemed about as long as the mast of a vessel.



Sea-serpent near the Isles of Shoals.

3. Portsmouth is the only sea-port town in New Hampshire. It is about as large as Hartford or New Haven. It is a very handsome place, and there are a number of beautiful buildings there. Dover is a large manufacturing

Questions on the Map of New Hampshire.— Boundaries of this State? Describe the Merrimack, Ammonoosuc. Describe Lake Winnipiseogee, Squam, Sunapee. In what part of the State are the White Mountains? Where is Mount Washington? Describe the Isles of Shoals. How many counties in New Hampshire? Their names?

Capital of New Hampshire? In what county is Concord? Describe the following towns: Portsmouth, Exeter, Dover, Keene, Plymouth, Walpole, Lancaster, Haverhill, Amherst. Population of New Hampshire? Extent? Greatest length of New Hampshire? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

1. What of the Isles of Shoals? 2. What of the Sea-serpent? What does the picture represent? 3. What of Portsmouth? Dover? 4. What

town. Some of the manufactories are very extensive. I suppose one of these establishments makes at least 8000 yards of cotton cloth every day.

4. There are a great many other pleasant towns in New Hampshire. Exeter is a handsome place, and Phillips' Academy is there, in which boys are taught Latin, Greek, and many other things. At Concord, where the legislature meets every year, there is an elegant State-house.

5. At Franconia, in Grafton County, there are some very celebrated iron-works. There are mines of iron there, and the people get great quantities of it. They make it into stoves, kettles, hollow ware, and castings for machinery. The mountains around this place, are very wild and beautiful. At Hanover is Dartmouth College, an old and respectable seminary, where a great many young men are educated.

6. There are several very fine lakes in New Hampshire. If you should ever travel in this State, you will find the country very hilly, and very interesting. Most of the people are engaged in farming. They have a great many horses, cattle and sheep.

7. As you pass along, you will sometimes find yourself on the top of a high hill. You will see around you a great many other hills; and in the distance, you will observe the tops of blue mountains. By and by, you will descend into a valley. You will see the streams running rapidly down the sides of the hills, and at the bottom of the valley you will frequently find a sheet of bright water, sparkling like a mirror.

8. Before you return, you must visit Lake Winnipiseogee. It is really

one of the most delightful lakes in the world. I suppose you have heard a great deal about Loch Lomond in Scotland; but I assure you, Lake Winnipiseogee is much more beautiful.

9. After you have seen this lake, you should visit the White Mountains. These are the highest mountains in the United States east of the Mississippi. Mount Washington, the tallest peak, is more than six thousand feet above the level of the sea.

10. It is a delightful thing to travel about these mountains in summer. A great many people visit them every year, and they all come back much gratified with their journey. Among the mountains, there is a place called the Notch. Here the mountain seems to be divided into two parts, from the top to the bottom.

11. This chasm affords a passage through which the river Saco runs. There is also a road through it, and as you pass along, you will be astonished at the mighty rocks that lie heaped up on both sides of you.

CHAP. IV.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—CONTINUED.

1. A few years since, an awful event occurred at the Notch in the White Mountains. An immense mass of rocks, earth, and trees, of several acres in extent, slid down from the height into the valley. It is scarcely possible to describe the scene. The mountains were shaken for several miles around. The air, put in motion by the falling mass, swept by like a hurricane. The noise was far louder than

of Exeter? Concord? 5. Franconia? Hanover? 6. What of Lakes? Face of the country? The people? 7. What will you observe in travel-

ing? 8. What of Lake Winnipiseogee? 9. The White Mountains? Mount Washington? 10. What of the Notch? 11. The river Saco?

thunder. Rushing down to the bottom of the valley, the rocks overturned and buried everything before them.

2. The bed of the river Saco was filled up; the road was covered over; and acres of ground, before fit for cultivation, now exhibited a confused mass of rocks split and shivered, and trees torn up by the roots, their trunks broken into a thousand pieces.

3. There is a circumstance of painful interest connected with this event. There was, on the side of the valley, a small house belonging to a man of the name of Willey. He, with his wife and two or three children, was in this house, when the mountain began to slide down. They heard the dreadful sound, and ran out of the house, to save themselves.



Slide in the White Mountains.

4. But alas, the avalanche of rocks and earth swept over and buried them forever in the ruins! The house stood still, safe and untouched, and if they had remained in it, they too had been saved. The house, I believe, remains there still, but the happy family that once inhabited it, are not there!

5. Somewhat more than two hundred years ago, New Hampshire, like

1. What of the Notch in the White Mountains? 3. What of the Willey Family? Describe the picture. 5. What of N. H. about two hundred years ago? What took place in 1623? When was the

Maine, was covered with forests, and inhabited by Indians; but in 1623, some English people came and built a house on Piscataqua river, which was called Mason Hall. The same year some of the people went farther up the river, and settled at Cocheco, now called Dover. The first house in Portsmouth was built in 1631.

6. In 1641, New Hampshire was attached to Massachusetts, but in thirty-eight years after, that is, in 1679, the king of England separated it from Massachusetts. It then became a royal province; the governor being appointed by the king of England.

7. In 1775, New Hampshire, with the other colonies, engaged in the revolution. A constitution, or form of government, was then adopted by the people, which remained till 1783. At that time, a new constitution was formed, which remains in force till this day. The early history of New Hampshire is full of incidents relating to the wars with the Indians. I shall have occasion to notice some of these, when I come to give an account of New England.

8. I will however tell you one of these stories now. In 1689, the savages made a dreadful attack upon Dover. They had been provoked by the white people, and determined on revenge. But they pretended to be friendly, and on the fatal night sent their women to get lodgings in the houses of the white people. These were admitted, and when all was quiet, they softly opened the doors. The Indians then rushed in, killed twenty persons, carried twentynine away as prisoners, and fled with such rapidity, as to escape from the people, who came to attack them.

first house in N. H. built? 6. What took place in 1641? In 1679? 7. In 1775? What in 1783? 8. What of Dover?

CHAP. V.

STATE OF VERMONT.

1. Connecticut river separates Vermont, as you see by the map, from New Hampshire on the east. This river runs through a valley of several miles in width, which is very rich and beautiful. The meadows here are exceedingly fine. Very large crops of corn, wheat and oats are also cultivated in the valley.

2. Vermont has several very pleasant towns along Connecticut river. Brattleborough is one of the prettiest villages in the State. It has several manufactories, and it is a place of a good deal of business. Bellows Falls is situated where the river tumbles over some rocks, in a very violent manner.

3. There are a great many mills at this place. There is a bridge over the cataract, from which you can look down upon the whirling waters. There were once a great many salmon in Connecticut river, and the Indians, about one hundred years ago, used to kill a great many of them with spears, as they attempted to ascend the falls. They were very expert at this, and would often take several of them in the course of an hour.

4. Windsor is a very pleasant town, and has considerable business. If you ever go to Windsor, I hope you will go to the top of Ascutney Mountain. It is very lofty, and when you are on

the top, you can see all around you, to an immense distance. You will also find, quite on the summit of this mountain, a beautiful little lake of clear water.

5. In going from the eastern to the western part of Vermont, you will cross a great many mountains. These are called the Green Mountains. There is a range of them running through Vermont from north to south. They spread over all the middle parts of this State.

6. On the western border of Vermont, is a very large lake called Champlain. At Burlington, you will find a steam-boat ready to carry you on the lake toward Canada. You will be very much pleased with Burlington, for it is one of the handsomest towns in New England. It is situated on the shore of the lake, and gives you a very fine prospect of it.

7. At this place is a college called the University of Vermont. If you go to Middlebury, you will also find a college there. You will see at Middlebury, a great many manufactories, and a quarry, where they obtain very handsome colored marble.

8. Montpelier is a handsome town, and there the legislature meets once a year, to make laws for the State. In passing through Vermont, you will perceive that most of the people are farmers. They raise a great many horned cattle, and sheep, and hogs, and horses. The horses are very fine ones. Many of the fine horses you see in New York,

Questions on the Map of Vermont.—Boundaries? Describe Lamoile River, Onion, Missisque, Otter Creek. Describe Lake Champlain, Memphremagog, Dunmore. Through what counties do the Green Mountains run? How many counties in V.? Their names? Capital? In what county is Montpelier? Describe the following towns: Windsor, Brattleborough, Royalton, Middlebury, Burlington, Bennington, Westminster, Rutland, Woodstock.

Population of Vermont? Square miles? Greatest length of V.? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

1. What of Connecticut River? Valley of Connecticut River? 2. Brattleboro'? 3. Bellows Falls Indians? 4. Windsor? Ascutney Mountain? 5. Green Mountains? 6. Lake Champlain? Burlington? 7. Middlebury? 8. Montpe-

Boston, and Hartford, come from Vermont.

9. During the winter, the weather is cold and the snow falls to a great depth. It is sometimes four or five feet deep. The people have three or four months' fine sleighing. Although the air is very sharp, yet the winter is a very merry season in this State. The children ride on their sleds down the hills, and the people glide swiftly over the hills and valleys in their sleighs.



Winter in Vermont.

CHAP. VI.

VERMONT.—CONTINUED.

1. About twenty years ago, a very singular event occurred in Vermont. There was a very large pond or lake, in the northwestern part of the State; it was three miles long, and one wide. One day, some men were at work at a bank of earth at the end of this pond.

2. Suddenly the bank gave way, and the water came rushing out at the place with great violence. For several miles, it rolled on in a torrent, sweeping off mills, houses, barns, and cattle, and barely giving the inhabitants time

to escape. It did not stop, till the whole pond was exhausted. Where the pond used to be, there is now only the bed of a small river.



Inundation in Vermont.

3. Almost twenty years ago, there was a famous battle fought on Lake Champlain, between some American and British ships. The battle took place in sight of Burlington. There were thousands of people along the shore to witness it. There were several American vessels and several British vessels also. The American ships were commanded by Commodore Macdonough.

4. They fought each other with cannon for more than two hours. At length the British ships were beaten, and the Americans took them nearly all. This happened during the late war with England, of which I shall tell you more before I get through the book.

5. A little more than fifty years ago, there was a celebrated battle fought at Bennington between some American and British soldiers. Gen. Stark, with some New Hampshire and Vermont troops, attacked some British soldiers commanded by Col. Baum at that place.

lier? What of the people in Vermont? Horses?
9. Winter? Describe the picture.

1. What event took place in Vermont, about

twenty years ago? 3. What battle on Lake Champlain near twenty years ago? Describe this battle. 5. What battle at Bennington near fifty years

6. The British troops were dressed in fine red coats, and white pantaloons. They had beautiful music, and their officers were mounted on fine horses. But the Vermont and New Hampshire men were not regular soldiers; they were farmers, and mechanics, and merchants, who went to war merely to drive these British soldiers from the country.

7. The Americans were dressed in their common clothes. The British troops, who were so finely attired, despised them. They called them Yankees, and laughed at their homespun dress. But when the battle began, the laughter of the British troops was done. The Americans fell upon them, and killed a great many of them, and by and by the British fled.

8. As they were running away, they met a good many more British soldiers. Thinking themselves now strong enough to beat the Americans, they went back, and began to fight again. But the Americans attacked them with such vigor, that soon seven hundred of the British were killed and wounded. Col. Baum was killed, and the rest of the British ran away. This battle took place during the revolutionary war, of which I shall tell you more by and by.

9. Vermont was not settled by the white people till some time after the other New England States. There was a fort built near Brattleborough, in 1724, called Fort Dummer. The remains of it are still to be seen. It was built to protect the people, who had settled near there, from the Indians.

10. Vermont was settled principally by people from Connecticut. They first established themselves along on Connecticut river, and afterwards in

other parts of the State. They had a good many skirmishes with the Indians, and for a long time there was a great dispute whether the land belonged to New York or New Hampshire.

11. It was decided in England, in 1664, that it belonged to New York, and consequently, the government of that colony began to sell the land to any persons who would buy. The settlers thought this very unjust, and determined to resist. New York then sent troops into Vermont and there was some fighting. These difficulties were not settled till years after.

12. During the revolutionary war, Vermont was independent, and in 1791, it became one of the United States. It is now little more than one hundred years since this State was a mere wilderness occupied only by scattered tribes of savages, bears, and wolves. Now it has a great many flourishing towns, and it is expected that steam-boats will soon navigate the Connecticut, as far up as Windsor. A year or two ago, a steam-boat ascended the river to the distance of two hundred miles from its mouth, and was warmly greeted by the inhabitants along the banks.



The People of Vermont welcoming a Steam-boat

ago? Describe this battle. 9. Settlement of Vermont? Fort Dummer? 10. Who were the first settlers of Vermont? What of these settlers?

11. What took place in 1664? 12. When did V. become one of the United States? What of Vermont one hundred years ago? What of it now? Describe the picture.

CHAP. VII.

STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS.

1. Massachusetts is not a large State, but there are a great many people in it. Those who live along the sea-board at Boston, Salem, New Bedford, Nantucket, and other places, own a great many ships, brigs, sloops, and schooners. Some of these ships are sent to England, and other parts of Europe, and they bring back various kinds of goods.

2. Other ships are sent to China, and they bring back tea. The trade carried on by these ships, is called commerce. Some of the vessels go to a great distance to catch whales, for their oil. Other vessels go out to catch cod-fish. A great many sloops, and schooners, and brigs, go to New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, and other places.

3. They carry a good many articles away, which are not wanted in Massachusetts, and get in exchange for them, other articles that are wanted here. So you see, there are a great many people constantly occupied in managing these ships. You may often see several hundred vessels of various kinds at Boston.

4. In those parts of the State remote from the sea, the people of Mas-

sachusetts are chiefly occupied in agriculture. There are a great many very fine farms, and the people manage them extremely well. There are also very extensive manufactories in Massachusetts. Lowell is a great manufacturing town. I suppose there are 40,000 yards of cotton cloth made there every week.

5. There are many other manufactories, at Waltham, Taunton, Canton, Ware, Springfield, Framingham, and other places. The goods manufactured in these towns are chiefly carried to Boston, and are thence taken to New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, New Orleans, and various foreign markets.

6. Boston is the largest town in New England. It has more than sixty thousand people in it. There are a great many interesting things in Boston. The Common is a very beautiful place. It is delightful to see it covered with people, men, women and children, on a pleasant summer evening. How pleased the boys are to get around the Frog-pond, and throw sticks into it, so that they may see the dogs swim in and get them!



Boys playing in Boston Common.

Questions on the Map of Massachusetts.—

Boundaries? Describe the Merrimack, River Charles, Deerfield, Westfield. What range of mountains in M.? Through what counties do these mountains run? Describe Massachusetts Bay. Barnstable, Cape Cod Bay, Buzzard's Bay. Describe the following islands: Martha's Vineyard, Nantucket, Elizabeth, Dukes. 5. How many counties in M.? Their names? Capital? In what county is Boston? Describe the following towns: Salem, New Bedford, Newburyport, Worcester, Amherst, Cambridge, Northampton, Springfield, Greenfield, Deerfield, Concord, Lexington, Pittsfield, Stockbridge, Westfield, Williamstown. Population of M.? Square miles? Greatest length of M.? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

1. What of M.? The people along the sea-board? 2. What is commerce? What of vessels belonging to M.? 4. What of the people remote from the sea? Manufactories in M.? 5. What of the goods manufactured in M.? 6. What of Boston? The Common? Describe the picture.

7. The State-house is finely situated, and it has a good appearance. When I was young, I used to love to go to the top of the State-house, from which there is a splendid prospect. I could see the ocean, with a great many islands in it, and I could see a great many fine towns all around Boston, and I could look down upon the city itself, and see almost all that was going on in the streets.

8. There are a great many handsome buildings in Boston. The Stone Market is a very fine building, and I do not think there is a more beautiful market in the world. Tremont House, King's Chapel, St Paul's Church, and Trinity Church, are very elegant edifices.

9. Salem is a large town, and many of the people are engaged in commerce. Worcester and Northampton are two remarkably handsome towns. Massachusetts abounds in beautiful villages. It is pleasant to observe, in travelling through it, the great number of very neat meetinghouses.

10. At Cambridge there is a University, where young men are educated. There is a library there, of about thirty thousand volumes. There is a college at Amherst, and one also at Williamstown. There are a great many academies and schools in the State.

11. It is not as cold in Massachusetts during the winter, as in Vermont. The snow is not as deep, and there is not as much sleighing. If you ever travel through the State, you will find it very hilly. Near Northampton, is a high mountain called Holyoke. From the top of it, you can look down upon Connecticut river, winding through a

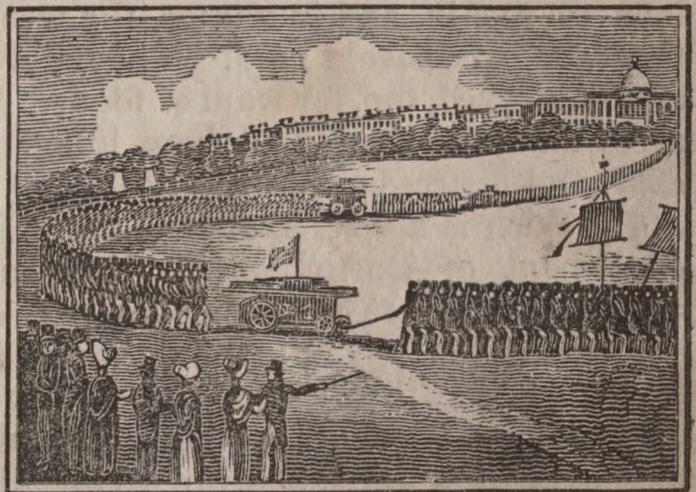
valley, so rich and beautiful, that it seems like a carpet woven with various bright colors.

CHAP. VIII.

MASSACHUSETTS.—CONTINUED.

1. On the 17th day of September, 1830, there was a great parade in Boston. There was the Governor of the State, and the Mayor of the City, and the President of Harvard College, and a great many other men; and then there were a great many children, little boys and girls, from all the schools in Boston.

2. It was a very bright day, and they all assembled in the Common. There were a great many thousand people beside, who came to look on. I was there myself, and I was delighted at the long rows of good little boys and girls. By and by, the men all went in a long procession to the Old South Church, and there Mr Quincy delivered an oration.



Celebration of the Settlement of Boston.

3. Now you will be curious to know what all this parade was about. I will tell you. It was to celebrate the settle-

7. State-house? 8. What fine buildings in B.? 9. Salem? Worcester? Northampton? In what does M. abound? What of meetinghouses? 10. Cambridge? Amherst? Williamstown?

Academies and schools? 11. Winter? Face of the country? Mt Holyoke?

1. What took place in Boston in September, 1830? 3. What was this celebration for? Describe

ment of Boston, which took place just two hundred years before; that is, on the 17th of September, 1630.

4. About ten years before, some persons had come from England, and settled at Plymouth. At that period, many of the people in England were persecuted, and could not be happy there.— They chose therefore to come to America, and live in the woods with Indians and wild beasts around them, rather than stay there.

5. Accordingly fifteen hundred persons came over in 1630, and settled at Charlestown, Dorchester, and other places. A man, by the name of Blackstone, came to the place where Boston now stands, and liking it pretty well, he told some of the people about it, and they went and settled there.

6. The place was surrounded by swamps then, and there were so many wolves, that they used often to attack the sheep and cattle at night, and kill them. The first settlers here suffered a great deal. They had poor miserable huts to live in, and in winter, the weather was excessively cold. They were almost starved, too, for want of food. A great many of them died from hunger, cold, and distress.

7. Such is a brief sketch of the first settlement of Boston. What a wonderful change has taken place in two hundred years! The spot where Boston stands was then a wilderness. The hills and the islands were covered with trees, and the Indians were living all around. Now the Indians are all gone, and there are sixty thousand white people living in this place; in the towns around it, there are at least as many more.

the picture. When did the settlement of Boston take place? 4. Why did some English people come to live in America? 6. What of wolves?

8. The forests have all been cut down, the hills have been levelled, the valleys have been filled up; houses, churches, and other public edifices now stand on the very places which were then occupied by Indian wigwams. The Bay, where then you could see only a few Indian canoes, is now covered with hundreds of vessels, and in the streets you hear the noise of a thousand wheels, where then were heard only the cries of wild beasts and savage men.

9. Such are the mighty changes that have taken place in this country, since it was settled by the white people. It is very interesting to look around, and see the present condition of towns, cities, and countries. But I think it is still more interesting to go back, and study the history of places, and see what has happened there in times that have now gone by.

10. The first settlement in New England, was made at Plymouth in 1620. The settlers were English people, called Puritans. Within ten years after, Salem, Dorchester, Charlestown and Boston were settled. A great many people came over from England, and thus the colony grew very rapidly.

11. They had a great many difficulties to encounter. Before they could raise grain to make bread of, they were obliged to cut down trees, and till the land. They had also to build houses, to make roads, and defend themselves against the Indians. Their condition was indeed a very hard one, and some of the people who came over, died from want and fatigue, as I have said before.

12. Many of them were killed by

Sufferings of the first settlers? 7. What change has taken place in 200 years? 10. When was the first settlement in New England? What were the settlers called? What of Salem, and other towns? 11. What had the settlers to do? What

the savages, but in spite of all these evils, the colony continued to increase. The white people penetrated further into the interior, cut down the trees, built towns and villages, and soon spread themselves over the whole country that is now called Massachusetts.

13. But after a while, the revolutionary war broke out, and then the people had to defend themselves against British soldiers. I shall tell you all about this war by and by. I shall tell you of the battle of Lexington, and of Bunker-hill, and many other interesting things.

CHAP. IX.

STATE OF RHODE ISLAND.

1. Rhode Island is the smallest of the United States; but there are a great many manufactories there, and the people carry on a good deal of commerce. At Pawtucket there are some very extensive cotton manufactories. These are situated on the falls of the Pawtucket river.

2. Providence is a large town, with a college, called Brown University. If you ever visit Providence, you should go and see the Arcade. This is a very beautiful building, where you can pur-

was their situation? 12. Describe the progress of the settlements in Massachusetts. 13. Revolutionary war?

Questions on the Map of Rhode Island.—Boundaries? Describe the Pawtucket River, Charles, Wood, Pawtuxet. Describe Narraganset Bay. Describe Rhode Island, Block Island.—How many counties in Rhode Island? Their names? Capital? In what county is Providence? Describe the following towns: Bristol, Newport, Pawtucket, Warren, E. Greenwich, W. Greenwich, Richmond, Coventry, Hopkinton. Population of Rhode Island? Extent? Greatest length of R. I.? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

chase almost every kind of elegant merchandise. You should also go and see the basin of the canal. This is a large place for boats, that come down the canal from Worcester, or that are preparing to go up.

3. At Providence you can take the steam-boat, and go to Newport. You will sail down Narraganset Bay, which I think is one of the most beautiful bays in the world. As you go along, you will see Bristol at your left. It is a very pleasant town, and there are a number of beautiful houses there.

4. Near Bristol, you can see a hill called Mount Hope. This is very celebrated, as having been the residence of a famous Indian Chief, whose name was Philip. His story is very interesting, and I shall tell it to you, by and by.

5. You will find Newport very pleasantly situated, but it has rather a dull and decayed appearance. It stands upon a large island called Rhode Island. This gave name to the State. Newport is resorted to by many people in summer, for its healthy and pleasant sea breezes.

6. The first white man that settled in Rhode Island, was Roger Williams. He was a clergyman, and lived in Boston; but he did not think exactly as the other clergymen of Boston did, and so he was banished from Massachusetts.

7. He went away with his family into the woods. After travelling a considerable time, he stopped, and began to build himself a house. Here he made a settlement, and called it Providence. This took place in 1636, and was the first settlement in Rhode Island. He

1. What of Rhode Island Manufactories? Pawtucket? 2. Providence? The Arcade? The Basin? 3. Steam-boat? Narraganset Bay? Bristol? 4. Mount Hope? 5. Newport. 6. Roger Williams? 7. When was the first settlement

was kindly treated by the Indians, who seemed pleased at his arrival among them.



Roger Williams emigrating to Rhode Island.

8. The colony thus begun, increased rapidly, and in the revolutionary war, it united with the other colonies, in the struggle for freedom. It became one of the United States in 1790.

CHAP. X.

STATE OF CONNECTICUT.

1. Connecticut, with the exception of Rhode Island, is the smallest of the New England States; but it has more inhabitants than any of them, except Massachusetts and Maine. The coun-

made in Rhode Island? Describe the picture. 8. When did Rhode Island become a State?

Questions on the Map of Connecticut.—Boundaries? Describe the Connecticut, Housatonic, Farmington, Thames. What range of mountains in Connecticut? Through what counties do they run? Describe the following islands: Falkners, Fishers, Goos, Thimble. How many counties in Connecticut? Their names? Capital? In what county is Hartford? New Haven? Describe the following towns: Norwich, New London, Windham, Tolland, Windsor, Wethersfield, Middletown, Litchfield, Fairfield, Danbury, Groton, Brooklyn. Population of Connecticut? Square miles? Greatest length of Connecticut? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

try is very hilly, but it abounds in streams and rivers, and is generally quite fertile.

2. The people are very industrious. A great many of them are occupied in cultivating the land, and they cultivate it very well. They raise a good many cattle, horses, hogs, sheep, and some grain and kitchen vegetables. A great many of the people are occupied in manufactories, and a considerable number are engaged in commerce. Almost every person in this State is busy about something.

3. Let us suppose that we begin at the eastern part of the State, and travel through it. We will commence our journey at Norwich. This town is situated on the Thames, and we shall see quite a number of vessels there, engaged in carrying on trade with New York, Philadelphia, and Charleston. There are several falls in the river, at Norwich, and these afford fine mill-seats, where there are some very extensive cotton manufactories.

4. The country around Norwich, was once occupied by a celebrated tribe of Indians, called Mohicans. These Mohicans were once at war with some other Indians. One night, several of these Indians had encamped on the top of some high rocks.

5. Their enemies discovered their situation, and secretly encircled them on all sides but one. On that side, was a steep precipice, at the foot of which was the river. When the morning came, the party of Indians first mentioned were about to depart, when they discovered that they were surrounded by their foes.

6. They made a short resistance;

1. What of Connecticut? 2. The people? What do they raise? What of Manufactures? Commerce? 3. What of Norwich? 4. In-

but perceiving that they were outnumbered by their enemies, they leaped over the rocks, and were killed by the fall.

7. Having examined Norwich, we will take a boat, and go down the river Thames, to New London. At this place, we shall see a steam-boat that goes to New York, and we shall also observe a good many other vessels. Among the vessels, we shall see a large ship fitting out to go to the Pacific Ocean to catch whales.

8. We shall perhaps see another vessel, that has just come back from a whaling voyage, after an absence of three years. If she is not unloaded, we shall find on board of her, about three hundred barrels of whale-oil, and a good deal of whale-bone. The oil is used for burning in lamps, and the whale-bone is for umbrella frames, and many other purposes.

9. Near New London, we shall see two forts; one of them is called Fort Trumbull, and the other, Fort Griswold. The latter is situated in Groton, just across the river Thames.

10. I will tell you an odd story of what happened in Groton, near twenty years ago. There was war then, between our country and Great Britain. There were several British ships in sight, and it was expected they would soon make an attack upon the forts. A company of soldiers from Hartford occupied a house in Groton, as their barracks.

11. One night as they were asleep, there was a sudden cry of alarm among the soldiers. They seized their arms, and rushed out of the barracks. The drums were beat, the sentinel fired his gun, and all supposed that the British

were now about to make the expected attack. Some of the men declared they could see the enemy landing, and others thought they could hear the roar of cannon in the distance.

12. The officers assembled, and inquired into the matter. They soon discovered, that the British had nothing to do with the alarm. It seems that one of the soldiers, whose name was Tom Stire, while he was sleeping with the rest, fell into a dream. He dreamed that the British were coming, and in his sleep he exclaimed, 'Alarm! alarm! the enemy are coming!' This occasioned the whole disturbance.

13. After we have examined New London, we will set out and go to Hartford. This is a very fine town, situated on Connecticut river. We must visit the Deaf and Dumb Asylum, where we shall see about one hundred deaf and dumb pupils, who are taught to read and write, and who can converse by signs, almost as well as we can by talking. We shall also see at Hartford, a place for persons who are insane, called the Retreat. Here they are taken care of, and many of them are cured. Before we leave town, we must go to Washington College, which is a fine institution.

14. After leaving Hartford, we will go to Middletown, which is beautifully situated on Connecticut river. On our way from Hartford, we shall pass through Wethersfield, a pleasant place, where the people raise many thousand bushels of onions, every year. These onions are sent to all parts of the country. Some of them go as far as Charleston, New Orleans, and the West Indies.

15. After leaving Middletown, we

dians? 7. New London? Steam-boat? Whale ships? 8. Whale-oil? Whale-bone? 9. Forts?

10. What story of the late war? 13 Hartford? Deaf and Dumb Asylum? Retreat? Washington College? 14. Middletown? Wethersfield?

shall pass through Durham, where the people make an immense quantity of shoes. At length we shall arrive at New Haven, which is the handsomest town in New England. Here we shall see a large basin, where there are a great many canal boats. These boats go up and down the Farmington canal; they carry up a great deal of merchandise, and bring down the produce of the country.



Picture of New Haven.

16. At New Haven we shall also see Yale College. This consists of several brick buildings, in which there are three or four hundred students. We must go into one of these buildings and see the cabinet. This is a collection of beautiful minerals from all parts of the world.

17. It is very interesting to examine this cabinet, for there are stones there, which have been brought from various parts of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. There are two stone pillars there, which came from the famous Giant's Causeway, in Ireland.

18. There are also some specimens of stones, which fell from the air in Connecticut, about twenty years ago. These stones formed a part of a vast red

meteor, that flew along in the sky, and finally exploded with a great noise. The stones fell in the town of Weston.

19. If we travel in other parts of Connecticut, we shall find at Berlin, a great many people busy in manufacturing tin ware. At Meriden, they make tin and pewter ware. At Bristol, they make wooden clocks, and very good clocks they are. At Waterbury, they make buttons; at Danbury, they make hats; at Salisbury, there are extensive iron-works.

20. In short, the people of Connecticut are very busy and ingenious. Many of them go to the Southern and Western States, and even as far as Mexico, to sell the articles that are manufactured in this State.

CHAP. XI.

STATE OF CONNECTICUT.—CONTINUED.

1. On the western border of Connecticut, is a range of low mountains, forming in some places the boundary between that State and New York. About twenty years ago, there was a woman in these mountains who lived alone in a cave. She had no bed but the rock, and no furniture but a Bible. Here she dwelt, summer and winter, for thirty years.

2. She had no light at night, and she had never any fire. In summer she occasionally wandered to the neighbouring villages, and begged a little milk, or other food. But she lived chiefly upon roots and nuts. The wild animals were so accustomed to see her, that they were not afraid of her. The foxes would come close to her, and the

ric stones? 19. Berlin? Meriden? Bristol? Danbury? Salisbury? 20. People of Connecticut?

1. Mountains in the West of Connecticut? 2.

15. Durham? New Haven? The basin? Canal boats? 16. Yale College? 17. Cabinet? 18. Meteor-

birds would alight on her head. She died about the year 1810.



Hermitess in Connecticut.

3. The name of this singular woman was Sarah Bishop. She lived on Long Island, at the time of the revolutionary war. Her father's house was burnt by the British, and she was cruelly treated by a British officer. She then left society, and wandered to the mountains. There she found a cave at a distance from any house, and there she resided, till about the time of her death.

4. At Hartford, there is a celebrated tree, called the Charter Oak. There is a story of that tree, which I will tell you. About 140 years ago, the king of England sent Sir Edmund Andros to take away the charters of the American colonies. These charters were papers, signed by the king, granting the colonies certain privileges; and the people of the colonies did not wish to give them up.

5. Well, Sir Edmund Andros came to Hartford to get the charter of Connecticut. Some of the people being assembled, at evening the charter was brought in. Sir Edmund was present, and was about to take the charter away,

What of Sarah Bishop? Describe the picture. 4. Tree at Hartford? What were the charters which Sir Edmund Andros came to get? Describe

when the lights were all suddenly blown out, and the people were left in the dark.

6. By and by, the candles were lighted again, but the charter was gone, and it could not be found. Sir E. was therefore obliged to go away without it. After a long time, the charter was found in a hollow place, in an old oak-tree, standing in the southern part of the city. It was hid there by Captain Wadsworth, who took it, and carried it off, when the lights were blown out



Charter Oak at Hartford.

7. The first house built in Connecticut by the white men was erected at Windsor, in 1633, by some people from Massachusetts. Two years after, about sixty persons came from Massachusetts, and settled at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield. They went across the wilderness, instead of going round by water, as the first settlers had done.

8. The next year some more persons removed from Massachusetts. They too went by land through the woods. There were then, of course, no roads; the whole space was an unbroken forest. They had nothing to guide them but a pocket compass, which they carried. They had a number of cows with them, which they drove

the picture. 5. Story of Sir Edmund Andros and the charter? 7. What of the first house in

through the woods; they subsisted principally on their milk, during their long and difficult journey.

9. The stages now travel from Hartford to Boston in a day. These people were several weeks then, in going over the same country.

10. I will tell you a story of what happened at Wethersfield, a few years after that place was settled. A very respectable man lived there, whose name was Chester. One day he went into the woods, to see about his cattle.

11. By and by, he set out to return, but he soon discovered that he had lost his way. He wandered about for a great while, hoping every moment to get out of the woods; but the farther he went, the thicker were the trees, and the deeper was the forest.

12. He now grew very anxious, for the night was approaching. He hallooed and shouted for help, but no one came. At length it was night, and the forest all around was covered with darkness. The wanderer listened, but he could hear no human voice; he could hear only the howling of wild beasts.

13. He climbed a tree, and there he remained in great anxiety till morning. Worn out with watching and fatigue, and faint for want of food, Mr Chester still made exertions to escape. He ascended to the top of a hill, and there he obtained a sight of the country all around.

14. But it was one boundless forest on all sides. He was now in the greatest distress. The weather was cloudy: he could not see the sun, so as to direct his course, and he had no hope but to lie down, and perish in the wilderness.

15. But at this moment, his ear

caught a distant sound. He listened attentively; it was the beat of a drum. He heard a shout and a call. He answered, and soon he was in the arms of his friends, who had come in search of him. The people of Wethersfield had felt great anxiety for his absence, and imagining that he was lost in the woods, the men had set out in various directions to look for him.

16. By this means he was discovered, and taken back to his family. His grave-stone is still to be seen in the burying-ground at Wethersfield. The place where he was lost is called Mount Lamentation—you will pass it on the road from Hartford to New Haven.

CHAP. XII.

NEW ENGLAND.

1. I have now given you some account of the six States, which bear the general title of New England. In travelling through this portion of our country, you will observe that it is generally hilly, and is crossed by a range of mountains, extending from the northeastern part of Maine, to the southwestern part of Connecticut.

2. The climate is not extremely hot, nor extremely cold. Snow begins

Questions on the Map of New England.—Boundaries? Boundaries of each of the six New England States? Which is the largest river? What five principal rivers in New England? Which way do they all run? What range of mountains in New England? Extent and direction of this range? Distance and directions of the following towns from Boston: Augusta. Concord. Montpelier. Providence. Hartford. New Haven. Extent of New England? Population? Greatest length of New England? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

1. How many States in New England? Their names? Face of the country? Mountains? 2

Connecticut? Other settlers? 8. What of their journey? 10 Story of Mr Chester?

to fall about the first of December. Spring returns in April. There is usually sleighing in all parts of it, for a few weeks during the winter. In summer, the weather is delightful. There are plenty of strawberries, cherries, currants, and other berries, and in the autumn, there are apples, pears, peaches, walnuts and chestnuts, and melons in abundance.

3. The largest river is the Connecticut. It is a beautiful stream, and waters four of the New England States. There is not a river on the globe whose banks afford more charming scenery than this. I have seen the Thames in England, the Rhone in France, and the Rhine in Germany, and they are all less pleasing to my eye than this.

4. You should see this river in June. The meadows and mountains along its borders are then in their glory. If you are there in May, you will see the fishermen, with their long nets, catching shad, for which this river is famous. In former times, there were a great many salmon in this river; but for some reason or other, they have entirely deserted it. I suppose they went away on account of the locks and canals that have been built upon it.

5. Not many years since, salmon were often to be taken as far up as Vermont. They even used to ascend the little streams that come down from the mountains, and were often caught in them. An old gentleman told me, that about thirtyfive years ago he was travelling at night on horseback, among the mountains in that State. As his horse was going through a small stream, that ran across the road, he heard a great pounding and plashing in the water. He

went to the spot, and there he found a salmon that weighed nine pounds, which had got into a shallow place, and could not get out. He easily caught it with his hands, and then carried it home.

6. In travelling through New England, you will observe a great many school-houses, by which you may know that the children are well educated; and you will see a great many churches and meeting-houses, by which you will understand that the people are attentive to religion.

7. There are still a good many forests, and much unoccupied land in New England. But the greater part of its surface is under cultivation. There are more than one thousand towns and villages scattered over its hills, valleys, and plains, and there are at least 2,000,000 inhabitants within its borders. The people are generally industrious, and are engaged in the various pursuits of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures.

8. Such is New England now; but what was it a little more than two hundred years ago? A mere wilderness, inhabited by bears, wolves, and other wild beasts, and by scattered tribes of Indians, who lived in wigwams, hunted with bows and arrows for subsistence, and were constantly slaying each other in battle.

9. What a great change has taken place in a short space of time! Yet many interesting things have happened within these two hundred years. It is pleasant to go back, and trace the history of former times. There is no part of our country, not a town or village, that has not some interesting story connected with it.

Climate? Fruits? 3. Connecticut River? 4. Shad? Salmon? 5. Story of a salmon? 6. School-houses? Churches? 7. Forests? Towns

and villages? Number of inhabitants? How are they occupied? 8. What of New England two hundred years ago? 9. What of it now?

10. I shall endeavor to collect the most amusing and instructive portions of New England history, and tell what I have to say in such a manner as to please you. You are now acquainted with the geography of this section of the country; I shall therefore take you back at once to the period when our forefathers first landed upon these shores.

CHAP. XIII.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. A little more than two hundred years ago, there were in England, a great many people, called Puritans. They were not happy in England, for they had peculiar notions about religion. They were cruelly treated, and some of them at length fled from the country. They went first to Holland, but finally they concluded to come to America.

2. They set out in two vessels, but one of them was leaky, and went back. They all entered the other ship, and after a long and stormy passage, they reached a broad harbor. They then sent some people ashore to examine the country. These found some Indian corn in baskets, buried in the sand. They also discovered Indian burial-places, surrounded by sticks stuck in the ground.

3. One night, the exploring party built a fire in the woods, and slept by the side of it. In the morning, some arrows, pointed with eagles' claws and sharp pieces of deer's horns, fell among them. These were sent by some In-

dians who came to attack them. The white men fired their guns at them, and the Indians ran off in great alarm. At this time the savages had no guns, and they imagined that the fire of the musket was lightning, and the report thunder. No wonder they were afraid of people, who, as they believed, made use of thunder and lightning.

4. Having examined the shores, the emigrants pitched upon a place, where they concluded to settle. On the 22d of Dec. 1620, they landed and called the place Plymouth. It was winter when they arrived, and the country had a most dreary aspect. There were no houses to receive them, there were no friends to welcome them; there was nothing before them but a gloomy forest, inhabited by savages and wild beasts. There was nothing behind them but the vast ocean, rolling between them and their native land. This little colony consisted of one hundred and one persons. They were divided into nineteen families, and each family built itself a log house.

5. For some time, the settlers were not visited by any of the Indians. They saw a few soon after their landing, but they ran away as if they were very much frightened. One day, however, an Indian came among them, saying in English, 'Welcome Englishmen! Welcome Englishmen!'

6. This surprised the white people very much. The Indian told them that his name was Samoset, and that he had learnt to speak English of the fishermen he had seen upon the coast.

7. After some time an Indian chief, called Massasoit, came near to the settlement with some of his men. He was

1. What of the Britons? 2. How did they come to America? What did they do after their arrival? Indian corn? Indian burial-place?
3. Story of Indians who attacked an exploring

party? 4. When did the emigrants land? Name of their settlement? What of the season? Situation of the pilgrims? Number of the Colonists? What did they do? 5. Indians? 6. Samoset?

a sort of king, and ruled over several tribes. He was at first afraid to go down into the village, but by and by he went down, and the people saluted him with a drum and fife, which he liked very much.

8. Then he went into the governor's house, where he ate a very hearty dinner, and drank a prodigious draught of rum. He then made a treaty with the white people, and agreed to be at peace with them. This treaty he and his descendants kept faithfully for fifty years.



Making a Treaty with Massasoit.

9. I will now tell you of two white men that got lost in the woods. It was winter, and it was snowing very fast. The snow had covered up the path, and they could not find their way back to the village. At length night came on, and as it grew dark, they heard a dreadful howling near them.

10. They were very much alarmed, for they did not know what wild beasts might be in the woods. All night they continued in the storm, shivering with cold, and frightened at the wild sounds they heard. At length the morning came, and they reached the settlement. I suppose the noise they heard, was the howling of wolves.

11. The settlers found their situation extremely uncomfortable. The winter was very severe, their houses were miserable, and they were destitute of all those conveniencies, which they had been accustomed to enjoy in England. Borne down with suffering, many of them were taken sick, and when the spring arrived, half of their number were dead.

12. Notwithstanding these discouraging circumstances, other persons came out from England and joined the settlers, so that, in ten years after, the whole number amounted to three hundred. In the year 1630, more than fifteen hundred persons came from England, and settled at Boston, Dorchester, Salem, and other places in the vicinity.

13. These people were nearly all Puritans, but many of them possessed wealth, and had been brought up in a very delicate manner. Their sole object in coming to America, was to enjoy their religious opinions without restraint. But they had not foreseen the sufferings that were before them.

14. The winter set in with unusual severity. The snow fell to a great depth, and the cold became intense. Assembled in log houses, which afforded but a poor shelter from the driving blasts, the emigrants had to endure hunger as well as cold. Their stock of provisions became nearly exhausted, and many of them were compelled to subsist on clams, muscles, nuts and acorns.

15. Unable to sustain these privations, many of them died. Among these was one woman whose fate has always excited peculiar sympathy. This was Lady Arabella Johnson. Her father was a rich man in England, and

7. What of Massasoit? 8. Describe the picture. 9. Story of two men that got lost? Sufferings of the

Colonists? 12. Other settlers? What happened in 1630? 13. What of these fifteen hundred settlers?

she had been brought up in the enjoyment of every luxury.

16. But in America, she was deprived of the common comforts of life. Her delicate frame could not endure these trials. Although her husband came with her, and every care and kindness were bestowed upon her, yet in about a month after her arrival, she died.

17. Such were the sufferings that attended the first settlers in New England. Yet these were sustained with the utmost fortitude. Those who died, left a state of sorrow, in the consciousness of having done their duty, and the strong hope of entering a state of peace beyond the grave. Those who lived, prayed to Heaven for strength to support them in their troubles, and their prayers seemed to be answered.

18. Thus prepared for life or death, they continued to struggle with their misfortunes with a degree of firmness, which we cannot fail to admire.

CHAP. XIV.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. I have now told you something about the two colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts. The settlement at Plymouth was the first permanent English settlement in New England. The colony of Massachusetts was so named, from an Indian tribe that originally inhabited the country. This colony increased much more rapidly than Plymouth.

2. Such favorable accounts were given of it in England, that many persons of distinction came from that coun-

15. Lady Arabella Johnson? 18. Conduct of the settlers?

1. What colony was first settled in New England? Colony of Massachusetts? 2. Sir Hen-

try and settled in Boston and other parts of the colony. Among these was Sir Henry Vane. He was but twenty-five years old when he arrived, but he was so grave that he won the hearts of the people, and they made him governor.

3. You will recollect it was in the year 1633, that the first settlement was made in Connecticut. In 1636, Roger Williams was banished, and settled in Rhode Island. New Hampshire was first settled in 1623, and Maine in 1628. In 1638, a settlement was made at New Haven, which was afterwards called, the Colony of New Haven. Vermont was not settled till 1724.

4. About the year 1635, a woman whose name was Ann Hutchinson, began to preach strange doctrines in Massachusetts. She had a pleasing address, and fluent speech, and she persuaded many persons to believe as she did. Among these was Sir Henry Vane.

5. By and by, some of the principal people assembled to consider the subject. They talked a great deal about it, and some of them became very angry. At length Ann Hutchinson's doctrines were condemned by a majority, and she was banished from the colony. Sir Henry Vane was very much displeased at this; so he went back to England, and after several years, he was executed, by having his head cut off for high treason against his king and country.

6. For a long time, the Indians did not molest the inhabitants of Massachusetts and Plymouth colonies. The treaty made with Massasoit, as before stated, was faithfully observed by them; but the Pequots, who lived in Connecticut,

ry Vane? 3. When was the first settlement made in Connecticut? Rhode Island? New Hampshire? Maine? Colony of New Haven? Vermont? 4. Ann Hutchinson? Sir Henry Vane? 6. Indians of Massachusetts? Pequots? What

troubled the people there very much. In 1637, they killed three men at Saybrook, and at Wethersfield they killed six men, three women, and twenty cows.

7. These things caused great alarm. Consequently, some of the people met at Hartford to consider what should be done. It was determined to send a body of men against them. About ninety white men and seventy friendly Indians were soon assembled. They were all placed under the command of Captain Mason.

8. They entered some boats at Hartford, and went down Connecticut river to Saybrook. Here they resolved to make a sudden attack upon Mystic, an Indian fort, situated where Stonington now stands. This was one of the principal places belonging to the Indians.

9. They reached the spot about day-break. The Pequots had no suspicion that an enemy was near. But by and by, a dog barked, and then one of the Indians, who saw the white men, gave the alarm. At this instant, the soldiers fired upon the Indians. Many of the savages were killed; but very soon the rest recovered from their astonishment, and then they fought bravely.

10. They shot their arrows and guns at the white men, and hurled stones and sticks at them with the greatest fury. The Indians were far more numerous than the white men, and the latter were at length nearly exhausted. At this moment, Capt. Mason ordered their fort to be set on fire. The flames caught quickly, and spreading from wigwam to wigwam, soon set them all in a blaze.

11. It was an awful scene, and the struggle was soon terminated. Seventy

did the Pequots do in 1637? 7. What did the colonists do? Capt. Mason? 8. Fort Mystic? 10. Describe the taking of the fort. What did the

wigwams were reduced to ashes, and six or seven hundred Indians were killed, either by the bullets, or the fire.

12. This dreadful event alarmed the Pequots, and they fled with their chief, Sassacus, to the west. They were followed by the white men, who overtook them in a swamp, near Fairfield. Here a battle was fought, and the Indians were entirely defeated. This was followed by a treaty with the remaining Indians, and the Pequots gave the colonies no more trouble.

13. In 1643, the four colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut and New Haven, entered into an agreement, for the purposes of mutual defence. They were led to do this, by fear of the Indians, who were now very unfriendly, and who watched every opportunity to do the white people mischief.

CHAP. XV.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. We now approach a period of great interest in the history of New England. The Indians perceived that the English were rapidly increasing in numbers, while they were as fast diminishing. They foresaw that in a short time, the English colonies would overspread the whole land, while they should themselves be driven back into the wilderness.

2. This excited their jealousy, and led them cordially to hate the English. Beside this, quarrels occasionally rose between the white inhabitants, and the

Pequots do after the battle? What did the white people do? What effect had the second defeat upon the Pequots? 13. What was done in 1643? Why was this agreement made between the New England colonies?

1. What of the Indians? The English? 3.

savages. Whether these originated with the English or the Indians, the latter were always sure to be thought in the wrong, and were punished by the white people accordingly.

3. In short, the Indians had discovered that the English, being wiser and more artful than they, were likely soon to become their masters; and the hatred thus excited, was aggravated by acts of injustice and oppression, committed on the part of the English toward the savages.

4. There lived, about this time, in Rhode Island, an Indian, who was called Philip by the English. He was Chief of the Wampanoags, and lived at Mount Hope, near Bristol. The country was then called Pokanoket.

5. Philip, being a man of great sagacity, saw that, unless the English colonies were checked, the Indians would, in the course of a few years, cease to exist as independent tribes. After reflecting upon these things, he resolved to make one great effort to drive the English from the land, and free his country from such dangerous intruders.

6. Accordingly, he visited, in secret, several of the tribes in New England. He conversed with the chiefs, and told them, that if they remained inactive, in a few years the beautiful rivers, and hills, and forests, which had descended from their fathers, would cease to be their inheritance. He described the English as crafty, long-sighted, and greedy, who added township to township, and colony to colony, and who would never be content until they possessed every foot of land west of the Hudson.

7. He prophesied the gradual decrease, and the final extinction, of all those tribes who once reigned over the whole land. He told them that their forests would be cut down, that their hunting grounds would be soon taken from them, that their warriors would be slain, their children wander forth in poverty, their chiefs be beggars, and their tribes be scattered and lost like the autumn leaves.



Philip addressing the Indian Chiefs.

8. To remedy these evils, Philip proposed that a mighty effort should be made by all the tribes in New England to destroy the English. He had little difficulty in bringing the chiefs into his schemes. A general effort was agreed upon, and soon the war began.

9. In June, 1675, as the people of Swansey, in Plymouth Colony, were returning home from church, a sudden attack was made by some Indians upon them. At this period, the Indians were supplied with muskets, powder and ball, and they had learnt to use fire-arms with considerable skill.

10. In a few moments, therefore, eight or nine of the inhabitants of Swan-

What had the Indians discovered? What increased the hatred of the Indians? 4. Who was Philip? 5. What did Philip perceive? What did

he resolve upon? 6. What did he do? What did he tell the chiefs? 8. What did Philip propose to the Indian chiefs that they should do? 9. What occurred in June, 1675? 10. What follow

zey were killed. The country was immediately alarmed, and the people flew to the succor of the inhabitants, from all quarters. An attack was made upon the Indians the next morning, and several of them were killed.

11. This resolute conduct awed the Indians; and Philip himself, expecting an attack, fled from Mount Hope with his warriors. It was soon ascertained that they had gone to a swamp in Pocasset, now Tiverton. The white people followed them thither, and entering the swamp, pursued them till night. They were then obliged to retreat.

12. The English finding it impossible to encounter the enemy in the swamp, determined to surround it, and starve them out. But Philip guessed their design, and privately stole away with his men.

CHAP. XVI.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. I can hardly tell you all that happened, during the bloody war that followed. In all parts of New England, the Indians seemed to be moved by a spirit of deadly revenge. They set the town of Springfield on fire, and no less than thirty houses were consumed.

2. About eighty young men were attacked at Muddy Brook, as they were employed in transporting some grain from Deerfield to Hadley. They had no idea that an enemy was at hand. They had stopped a moment with their teams, and were gathering some grapes by the road side.

3. Sudden as the thunderbolt, the

ed the attack upon the people of Swanzey? 11. What did Philip and his warriors do? 12. What did the white people do? What of Philip?

1. What of the Indians? Springfield? 2.

savage yell broke upon their ears. They were immediately surrounded by the Indians, and having no arms, they were incapable of defence. Seventy of them were shot down, and these were all buried in one grave.

4. In New Hampshire and Maine, the Indians fell upon the towns, set the houses on fire, and killed the inhabitants. At Saco, Dover, Exeter, and other places, they committed the most dreadful outrages.

5. In Massachusetts, they attacked Quaboag, now Brookfield, and burnt all the houses except one, in which the inhabitants had taken refuge. This they also assailed, and for two days incessantly, they poured their musket shot upon it. A great multitude of balls passed through the sides of the house, but only one person in it was killed.



Indians besieging the House.

6. Finding it impossible to destroy the people in this way, they attempted to set fire to the house. With long poles, they thrust against it fire-brands, and rags dipped in brimstone. They shot arrows of fire upon it, and finally they loaded a cart with flax and tow, set it on fire, and pushed it against the house.

What happened at Muddy Brook? 4. What took place in New Hampshire and Maine? 5. What at Brookfield? Describe the attack of the Indians on a house at Brookfield. Describe th

7. The curling flame was soon communicated to the building; and now, feeling certain of their prey, the savages took their stations, so that they might cut down those who should attempt to escape. But in this moment of peril, the white men were saved, as if by the hand of Heaven. A sudden shower fell upon the flames, and at once extinguished them.

8. Soon after, Major Willard with some soldiers came to their relief. He attacked the Indians, killed a number of them, and the rest fled away.

9. At length it was thought necessary to humble the Narragansetts. They were a powerful tribe in Rhode Island, and occupied a fort of great strength. Near two thousand white men went against them. The fort was built on a hill in the centre of a swamp, and in it there were four thousand Indian warriors.

10. There was but one entrance to the fort. This was accidentally discovered by the white men, and they gallantly rushed in to attack the enemy. But the Indians met them, and many of the English were killed. They were at length obliged to retreat; but by and by, some Connecticut troops entered the fort on the opposite side, and at the same moment the attack was vigorously renewed at the entrance.

11. The Indians were now cut down with dreadful slaughter. The fort was taken, and six hundred wigwams were set on fire, and burnt to the ground. More than one thousand of the Indian warriors were killed, and three hundred were taken prisoners.

12. Such were some of the events

of this remarkable war. For near two years, almost every part of New England was a scene of bloodshed. But although the Indians killed great numbers of white people, yet their own loss was far greater. In truth, they never recovered from the many reverses they experienced.

13. Although there were perhaps ten times as many of them as of the white people, yet such was the superior skill and management of the latter, that the Indians were effectually defeated, and their power in New England finally overthrown.

14. At length the war was closed by the death of Philip. He was found in a swamp near Mount Hope, with several other Indians. Captain Church, with a few white men, surrounded the swamp at night.

15. When the morning came, Philip perceiving that he could not escape, rushed toward the spot where some of the white men lay. An English soldier levelled his gun, but it missed fire. An Indian who was of the party, took a deliberate aim, and shot the chief through the heart. Thus fell the most celebrated of all the Indian chiefs. From this time, the Indians finding farther resistance vain, began to submit to the English. The struggle was continued awhile in Maine, but that soon ended, and no general effort was ever after made, on the part of the Indians, to subdue the English.

16. This war, the story of which I have just related, lasted from the year 1675 till 1678. About six hundred white men were killed in the struggle, thirteen towns were destroyed, and six

picture. 9. What of the Narragansetts? 10. Describe the attack upon them. 11. What was the result? 12. What did New England present for near two years? 13. What was the result of

this war to the Indians? 14. What event terminated the war? 15. Describe Philip's death. What of the Indians after this? 16. How long did Philip's war last? What losses were suffered

hundred dwelling-houses burnt. These were dreadful losses to the poor colonists, but the unhappy Indians suffered still more.

17. Their chiefs and their principal men were nearly all killed. Their wigwams were burnt, they were driven from their homes; and now defeated and subdued, their situation was one which may well excite our pity. Savage life, in its happiest state, is a miserable condition; but the New England Indians had now lost their independence, and all that savages hold most dear.

18. From that period they rapidly diminished; most of the tribes are now extinct, and a few hundreds are all that remain of a mighty people, that once threatened to drive our forefathers from this land.

CHAP. XVII.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. Soon after Philip's war, the colonies began to be involved in difficulty with England. The king of England claimed these colonies as his own, and he, with the parliament, made certain laws respecting trade and commerce with America.

2. Now it was pretended that the colonies had violated these laws, and therefore the king determined to take away their charters. These charters were of great importance, for they gave the colonies many privileges. The king, who reigned in England at the time, was James II. He sent Sir Ed-

mund Andros over to this country, to take away all the charters of the New England colonies, except Plymouth.

3. He also appointed Sir Edmund governor over all the colonies, whose charters he thus proposed to take away. Accordingly he came. I have told you how the charter of Connecticut was hid in an oak tree; but Sir Edmund assumed the government of the New England colonies, although he could not find that charter.

4. At first he governed the people pretty well; but by and by, he did many things, which displeased them very much. Many unjust and oppressive laws were passed, and the people saw that Sir Edmund had no regard to their happiness and prosperity in his administration.

5. Sir Edmund began to rule in 1686. Two years after, the news arrived that James II., King of England, had become so unpopular as to be obliged to leave the country, and that a new king, William III., had taken his place on the throne. This news gave the colonies great joy, for they hated James II. on account of his conduct toward them, and more especially on account of the governor, Sir Edmund Andros, whom he had sent to rule over them.

6. Under the excitement of this joy, the people of Boston seized Sir Edmund and about fifty of his associates, and put them in prison. There they remained for some time; they were then sent to England, to be tried for their misconduct.

7. I will now relate what may seem to you very strange. In the year 1692,

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

What king reigned at this time? What of Sir Edmund Andros? 4. What of his government? 5. What news arrived in 1688? What effect had this news on the colonists? 6. What did the people of Boston do? 7. What took place at

two children of Mr Paris, a minister in Salem, Massachusetts, were taken sick. They were affected in a very singular manner, and the physicians were sent for. They were at a loss to account for the disorder, and one of them finally said they must be bewitched.

8. The children hearing this, and being in great distress, declared that an Indian woman living in the house, had bewitched them. Mr Paris believed what the children said; the Indian woman was accused of the crime, and in a state of agitation and alarm, partially confessed herself guilty. This affair excited great attention, many people came to see the children, and they were very much pitied.

9. By and by other children imagined that they were affected in a similar manner, and they said that they were secretly tormented by an old woman in the neighborhood. All these things were believed, and more children and several women soon declared themselves bewitched. They charged several persons with being the authors of their distress.

10. They pretended that these persons entered their rooms through keyholes or cracks in the window, pinched their flesh, pricked them with needles, and tormented them in the most cruel manner. Nobody could see these tormentors but the sufferers themselves, although several persons might be in the room, where one of the bewitched was wailing and shrieking, from the pinches of the witch.

11. Strange as it may seem, this matter, instead of being regarded as a delusion, was thought to be founded in reality. The people in those days be-

lieved that the devil sometimes gave to certain persons, great power for purposes of evil. These persons were said to deal with the devil, and they were considered very wicked.

12. The business they were supposed to carry on with him, was called witchcraft, and any person under their influence was said to be bewitched. In England, parliament had thought it necessary to make severe laws against witchcraft. Several persons there had been condemned and executed under those laws. It was now thought proper to proceed in a similar manner at Salem. Accordingly, those persons accused of practising witchcraft upon their neighbors, were put in prison, and a court was formed to try them.

13. Many of them were examined and found guilty, and some, under the influence of a distempered imagination, confessed that they were guilty. The business at length reached a very alarming height. Nineteen persons had been executed; one hundred and fifty were in prison; and many more were accused.

14. In this state of things, the people began to doubt the correctness of their proceedings. They examined the subject more carefully, and were very soon satisfied that they had acted rashly. The judges of the court also began to take different views of the subject. Those who were brought to trial, were therefore acquitted, and those in prison were released.

15. Thus ended this extraordinary delusion. We at the present day, who know that there is no such thing as witchcraft, cannot but wonder that our ancestors should have believed in it

Salem in the year 1692? 8. What did the people supposed to be bewitched pretend? 11. What did the people believe in those days? 12. What

had been done in England? What was done in Salem? 14. What at length did the people begin to do? What followed? 15. Is there any

and that many persons should have been hung, for a crime that was only imaginary. But we should remember that it was a common error of that age.

16. It was not an invention of their own. They received their notions from England, and it was natural they should act agreeably to them. We must do them the justice to say, however, that they very soon discovered their error, and expressed their sorrow for it.

CHAP. XVIII.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. Soon after the accession of William III. to the throne of England, a war broke out between that country and France. Now the French had several settlements in Canada, extending along the river St Lawrence, and including Montreal and Quebec. They had also several forts on Lake Champlain and Lake George.

2. The war between France and England in Europe, of course, extended to their American colonies. The French from Canada, assisted by large numbers of Indians, invaded several parts of New England, burnt the houses of the inhabitants, killed many of the people, and carried large numbers of men, women and children into captivity.

3. The cruelties practised during this war, almost exceed belief. Towns were attacked at midnight, and in mid winter; the people were often killed in their

such thing as witchcraft? 16. Why did our forefathers believe in it?

Questions on the Maps of the United States and North America, &c.—In which direction is Canada from New England? Nova Scotia from New England? Newfoundland? In which direction is Boston from Quebec? From Montreal? From Lake George? Lake Champlain?

3*

beds, and those whose lives were spared, were torn from their homes, and obliged to endure sufferings worse than death. The history of these things is too painful for my little readers; I will therefore only tell them one story of this cruel war.

4. In the winter of 1696, a party of Indians made an attack on the town of Haverhill, Massachusetts. Among the people of that town, was a Mr Dunstan. He was in a field at work, when the news of the attack reached his ears. He immediately started, and ran to his house, to save his family. He had seven children, and these he collected for the purpose of taking them to a place of safety before the Indians should arrive.

5. His wife was sick, and she had an infant but a week old. He now hurried to her, but before she could get ready to leave the house, Mr Dunstan perceived that a party of the savages were already close to his dwelling. Expecting that all would be slain, he ran to the door and mounted his horse, with the intention of taking one of his children, the one he loved best, and flying with that to a place of safety.

6. But which should he take, which of his seven children should he leave to the savages? He could not decide, and therefore telling the children to run forward, he placed himself between them and the Indians. The savages discharged their guns at him, but they did not hit him. He had a gun, too, and he fired back at them.

7. Then he hurried his little children along, loaded his gun as he went, and fired at his pursuers. Thus he

1. What of England and France? What possessions had the French in America? 2. What did the French Indians do? 3. What of the cruelties of this war? 4. What happened in the winter

proceeded for more than a mile—protecting his little family, defending himself, and keeping the enemy at a distance. At length he reached a place of safety, and there, with feelings of joy which cannot be described, he placed his children beyond the reach of the Indians.



Mr Dunstan saving his Children.

8. But Mrs Dunstan was destined to undergo the severest trials. Although she was very ill, the savages compelled her, with the nurse and her little infant, to go with them. They soon left the town of Haverhill, and set out to go to the homes of the Indians. These were at the distance of one hundred and fifty miles. You must recollect that it was winter, and the journey was to be performed on foot through the wilderness.

9. Mrs Dunstan and the nurse were soon overcome with fatigue. The Indians perceiving that the little infant occupied much of their attention, snatched it from the mother, and killed the little innocent, by striking it against a tree. After a toilsome march, and the greatest suffering, Mrs Dunstan and her companion completed the journey.

10. But now the Indians concluded to remove to a distant place, and these

two women were forced to accompany them. When they reached the end of their journey, they discovered they were to undergo severe torture. They therefore determined if possible to make their escape.

11. One night, Mrs Dunstan, the nurse and another woman rose secretly, while the Indians were asleep. There were ten of them in the wigwam where they were. These the women killed with their own hands, and then departed. After wandering a long time in the woods, they reached Haverhill, and Mrs Dunstan was restored to her family. This is a strange story, but I believe it is perfectly true.

12. A few years after the war of which I have just been telling you, another war broke out with the French, which occasioned great distress in the colonies. It was called Queen Anne's war, for at that time King William was dead, and Queen Anne was on the British throne.

13. This war commenced in 1702, and the French and Indians immediately invaded New England. In 1704, a party of French and Indians made an attack on Deerfield. It was at night, and in the midst of winter. All the people were asleep; they had no fear that an enemy was at hand. The sudden yell of the savages burst on their ears, and they then knew the dreadful scene that was coming.

14. The town was set on fire, forty-seven of the people were killed, and one hundred men, women and children were carried into captivity. Among these was Mr Williams, a clergyman, and his wife and five children. They set out on foot, and began their journey through the snow.

of 1696? Tell the story of Mr Dunstan. 8. Tell the story of Mrs Dunstan. 13. When did Q.

Anne's war begin? What happened in 1704? Describe the attack on Deerfield. 14. What of

15. On the second day, Mrs Williams, who was in bad health, was very weary, and unable to keep up with the rest. Her husband was not allowed to assist her, and she seemed to be on the point of fainting, from weakness and fatigue. At this time, one of the Indians came up to her, and killed her.

16. The party then went on; but seventeen other persons were killed by the savages, before they arrived in Canada. Mr Williams was kindly treated by the French people there, and after two years, he returned, with fiftyseven other captives, to Deerfield. He was minister of that town for twelve years after his return, and then he died.

17. This story affords a fair example of the cruelties of this war. It continued till the year 1713. The people of the colonies suffered very much; they made several attempts to take Canada from the French. Queen Anne sent over a considerable number of troops, to assist them in doing so. But this project failed. They however took Port Royal in Nova Scotia, which is now called Annapolis.

18. At length, in 1713, the French and English made peace with each other in Europe, and the war ceased there and in the colonies also. From this time, Nova Scotia, and Newfoundland belonged to the English. Canada still belonged to the French, and continued so till the year 1759, when it was captured by the British, and has since remained subject to that government.

Mr Williams and his family? 15. Of Mrs Williams? 16. What of the other captives? What farther account can you give of Mr Williams and the other captives? 17. How long did Queen Anne's war continue? What did the colonies attempt to do? What place did they take? 18. What took place in the year 1713? To whom did Newfoundland and Nova Scotia belong from this time? To whom did Canada belong?

CHAP. XIX.

NEW ENGLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. I am sorry that I have but little to tell you about this period, except tales of war. It is painful to read the history of times gone by, and learn what dreadful sufferings have been endured by the generations that have lived before us. But painful as it is, we must still read it. It may teach us the sad consequences of war, and show us how much better it is to be always at peace.

2. In the past ages of the world, kings and generals and great men have been fond of making war, and I am afraid that some people are disposed to applaud them for it. But the wisest and best of men look upon all wars as evils, and they deem those persons very wicked, who promote a war that could safely be avoided.

3. About the year 1722, the Indian tribes in Maine, and along the eastern and northern border, made war upon the English settlers. It is supposed that they were incited to this by some French Jesuits, Roman Catholic priests, who lived in Nova Scotia. These Indians often attacked the people in Maine, Massachusetts, and New Hampshire, and annoyed them very much. But in 1725, this war ceased.

4. In 1744, England and France were again involved in strife. George II. was then king of England, and this war is called King George's war. The most important event to New England, that took place during this period, was the capture of Louisburg. This was a

3. What took place about the year 1722? What did the Indians do? When did this war cease? 4. What happened in 1744? What was the most important event in America during King George's war?

very strongly fortified town, belonging to the French, on the Island of Cape Breton in the Gulf of St Lawrence.

5. Here they kept a good many ships, and in time of war, these drove away the English and American sailors, who went to the banks of Newfoundland to catch cod fish. To take Louisburg was therefore a great object. To accomplish this, the colonies united, and sent about 4300 men, under the command of Sir William Pepperell, against it. They went in twelve ships, and some smaller vessels.

6. They arrived at Louisburg the last of April, 1744. They were occupied fourteen days in drawing their cannon across a swamp, so as to bring them near the town. They then besieged it; that is, they surrounded it both by land and water. They also made frequent attacks upon the soldiers in the forts.

7. This continued till the 15th June, when the French Commander requested them to stop, and on the 19th he surrendered the place into the hands of the Americans. Thus Louisburg and the Island of Cape Breton came into the possession of the English.

8. In 1748, France and England again made peace, and the colonies once more enjoyed tranquillity. But this did not last long. A still more extensive and important war was at hand; this commenced in 1755, and is called in this country the French and Indian war. There are people now living who remember this war. I have seen myself a good many of the old soldiers

In which direction is the Island of Cape Breton from Boston? Describe Louisburg. 5. Why was it a great object with the colonies to take Louisburg? What did the colonies do? 6. Describe the proceedings of the expedition against Louisburg. 7. How and when was Louisburg taken? 8. What happened in 1748? What began in 1755? 9.

that were engaged in it, and they have told me many stories about it. I shall tell you some of these by and by.

9. But as several colonies beside those of New England were engaged in this war, and as it was carried on chiefly in Canada, and along the remote parts of the country, it does not seem proper to give an account of it, while I am only telling you the history of New England. After I have told you about the other colonies, I shall give you an account of the French war.

10. I need only say now, that New England took an active part in it, and that her soldiers contributed very much to the success of the British arms. The whole of Canada was conquered by the English, and from that time to the present, has been subject to Great Britain, together with Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, and Cape Breton. This war was closed by a treaty of peace, made at Paris in 1763.

11. It was about the time that this peace was concluded, that the people of America began to be agitated by the coming revolution. The conduct of the British king and parliament, was marked with selfishness from the first settlement of the country.

12. I mean by this, that, in the laws they had passed, the regulations they had made, and the officers they had appointed for America, they had it less in view to promote the happiness and prosperity of the colonies, than to make them profitable to England, the mother country.

13. Yet in spite of this unkind policy, the people here loved and honored

Where was the French war chiefly carried on? 10. What part had New England in the French war? What was the result of that war? When and how was the French war closed? 11. What of the king and parliament of England? 13.

the king, and cherished the strongest attachment to Old England. Many of the inhabitants had come from that country, and the rest had descended from English emigrants. England was therefore always spoken of as Home, the Mother Country, the Land of their Fathers. By such tender epithets did the colonies express the affection they felt for England.

14. But these feelings were no security against injustice. The British parliament passed a series of acts relating to America, from 1760 to 1770, which roused the indignation of the people, and brought on the Revolutionary War. New England took a leading part in this noble struggle.

15. I shall have occasion to tell you many interesting things that happened in this section of the country, during that war. But as the whole nation was engaged in it, I shall defer my account of it till I have told you the history of the other colonies.

CHAP. XX.

THE PURITANS.

1. As stated in the preceding chapter, the separate history of the New England colonies, properly closes about the time of the French war. They then began to act in concert with the other colonies, and from that period their history is soon lost in that of the nation. But before that time, the history of New England is but little connected with the other parts of the country.

2. The Dutch, having settled New

York, interrupted the intercourse between them and the more southern English colonies; but they were not more separated by this circumstance, than by difference of character. New England was settled almost wholly by the Puritans.

3. These were very singular people. They held religion to be of the greatest importance. They loved the services of religion, and it was one of their greatest enjoyments to meet together and worship in their own way. They spent much time in praying to God in secret. They read the scriptures with a deep and careful interest, and they held it to be the great business of this life, to make preparation for another.

4. Such were the views and feelings of the Puritans. In England, they were miserable, for they could not indulge their religious feelings, and express their religious opinions in peace. They were ridiculed, despised, and persecuted. To them, therefore, the wilderness of America, was a better place than England; for there, in the woods, they could assemble together, and worship God in their peculiar manner, without reproach and without opposition.

5. In coming to this country, therefore, the principal object of these people was to enjoy their religion. Being all of one mind, they seemed not to foresee, that future generations would be divided in opinion; and, taking the example of the Jews, they proposed to form a community as nearly as possible according to the ancient Jewish system.

What were the feelings of the colonies toward England? How were they accustomed to speak of it?

14. What occasioned the Revolutionary War?

1. Why does the history of New England properly close with the French war? What of the

history of New England previous to the French war? 2. What of the Dutch? What of New England? 3. What of the Puritans? 4. The Puritans in England? 5. Their object in coming to America? What did they not foresee? What

6. Some time after the colonies were settled, persons came among them, and began to preach doctrines different from their own. The Puritans had never thought of allowing people to enter the colonies, and utter sentiments and opinions different from those held by the first settlers.

7. They had no idea of giving free toleration to all religions; they therefore committed the same error that had driven them from England. They withheld charity from their opponents; they gave them hard names; they imprisoned some, banished some, and put others to death.

8. I have told you how Roger Williams was expelled, and I will now tell you some other things of a similar nature. About the year 1650, several persons in the Plymouth and Massachusetts colonies adopted the sentiments of the Baptists, and were of course excommunicated from the churches to which they belonged.

9. After this, Mr Clark, a Baptist clergyman of Rhode Island, came into Massachusetts with two other Baptists, named Holmes and Cranfield. One sabbath morning, as they had assembled for worship, they were seized by the public officers, and forcibly carried to the Congregational church, where they were kept during the service. Mr Clark refused to take off his hat; so he sat with it on, and when the minister began to pray, he took a book out of his pocket and amused himself with reading. When the service was done, he addressed the people and explained his conduct.

10. These three Baptists were tried by a court, a fortnight after this, and sentenced as follows;—Mr Clark was to pay a fine of about 100 dollars; Mr Holmes about 150, and Mr Cranfield about 25 dollars. In case they refused, they were to be publicly whipped. They all refused; but Mr Clark's fine was privately paid by his friends. Cranfield was released, and Holmes suffered the sentence of the court.

11. He received a number of cruel lashes upon the naked back, which he endured with great fortitude. Two of his friends were present, and after the punishment was over, they shook hands with him, and praised him for his courage and constancy. For this act, these men were tried and sentenced to pay forty shillings, or be publicly whipped. The fines were however paid by their friends.

12. Such were some of the proceedings against the Baptists; but still more cruel steps were taken in respect to the Quakers. Of these, I will now give you some account.

CHAP. XXI.

THE PURITANS.—CONTINUED.

1. The first Quakers that came into Massachusetts, were Mary Leisher, and Anna Austin, who reached Boston, from England, by way of the West Indies, in 1656. They brought with them some Quaker books, which the deputy governor caused to be burnt by the hangman, while the women themselves were put in prison. Here they were kept in close confinement for five weeks, no

did they propose? 6. What took place some time after the colonies were settled? 7. Of what had they no idea? What error did they commit? What did they do? 8. What took place about 1650? 9. What of Mr Clark and two other

Baptists? What did Mr Clark do? 10. What sentence was passed upon the three Baptists? 11. What of Holmes? Two of his friends?

1. Who were the first Quakers that came to

person being permitted to converse with them even through the window. They were finally sent back to the West Indies in a ship, and the jailor kept their beds and bible for his trouble.

2. A short time after this, eight other Quakers came to Boston, who were immediately put in prison, where they were kept eleven weeks. Very severe laws were then passed, banishing all Quakers from the colony upon pain of death. But the greater the cruelty with which they were treated, the more they flocked to the colonies.

3. At length, four of them, who had been banished, having returned, were apprehended, convicted, and sentenced to death. They were then led out, and executed, agreeably to the sentence. They died with great courage, and declared to the people, who were assembled, that they rejoiced in their death, and thanked God that he had given them this opportunity to attest the truth and sincerity of their faith. Thus they died triumphing, at the very gallows, over their persecutors.

4. These cruelties had an effect directly opposite to that intended by the Puritans. It led the people in the first place to pity them, then to defend, and finally to agree with them. Instead, therefore, of suppressing either the Baptists or the Quakers, the laws and proceedings against them actually induced a great many persons to join those sects.

5. It is very certain that the New England Fathers made great mistakes in this matter, but we must consider that these things happened almost two

New England? What of them? 2. What of eight other Quakers? What laws were then passed? 3. What of four Quakers that had been banished? 4. What effect had these cruelties? 5. What is therefore obvious? What, however, should we consider? What idea had not yet en-

tered into the minds of men? Were the Puritans alone in their intolerance? What was the condition of the rest of mankind on this subject? 6. What of our own country? What of many other parts of the world? 7. What therefore should we do in respect to the New England Fathers? 8. What of their wisdom? Of their courage? Of

hundred years ago. The idea, now so common, and now so clear to us all, that every person has a right to worship God in his own way, had not then entered into the minds of men. Our forefathers were not alone in their narrow views; all over the wide world, mankind were in darkness on this subject.

6. The shadow has indeed passed away from our own country. Here, every man may freely choose in what manner he will hold communion with his God. But in many parts of the world, even now, there are persons, who suffer much on account of their faith. There are, I think, even in our own land, at this very day, those who are spoken of unkindly and uncharitably, because of their religion.

7. Let us not, therefore, think too harshly of the New England Fathers, for their narrow-mindedness on this point. Let us look rather to their virtues; their patience under misfortune their steady endurance of cold, hunger, want, and privation; their deep and fervent piety; their strict observance of what they deemed right; and their stern rejection of whatever they thought wrong.

8. Let us look also to the wisdom of these men. They immediately established schools for the education of all classes. This was a noble thought, and one that had not yet entered into the heads of the wisest men in Europe. Observe their courage, vigor, and enterprise in war; how ready were they all to assemble at the moment of danger,

tered into the minds of men? Were the Puritans alone in their intolerance? What was the condition of the rest of mankind on this subject? 6. What of our own country? What of many other parts of the world? 7. What therefore should we do in respect to the New England Fathers? 8. What of their wisdom? Of their courage? Of

whether it came from their savage or civilized foes!

9. Consider their self-denial. The labors of the field, the services of religion, the calls of war, and their domestic duties, alone engaged their attention. They had no amusements; they had parted with them all. They were brave stern men, ready to die if God so ordained it; yet resolute in discharging all the duties of life, so long as it lasted.

10. To give you a more lively idea of the character of our New England ancestors, I will sketch a picture of what might have been seen, in any of the New England villages, in the earlier part of their history.

11. We will suppose it to be the morning of the sabbath. Surrounded by a few houses, some of them built of logs and some of boards. is a small brown building, without a steeple; this is the meeting-house. At the appointed hour, the worshippers are seen gathering to the church from various quarters.



A New England Church in early Times.

12. But each man carries a gun, and over his shoulder he has the trappings of a soldier. The guns are all placed together near the meeting-house door, and one man is stationed there to

their self-denial? 11. What spectacle might have been seen on a sabbath morning in a New England

give the alarm, if the Indians are seen to be approaching the spot. Thus prepared to fly to the defence of their houses and their families, they enter the house of God, and there they worship. How powerful must have been the motive, which drove our fathers from England, into the wilderness, to live a life like this!

13. I will sketch another picture. We will suppose it to be a week day; a day of labor. You see a man going with his scythe into the field; but he is armed with a musket. You see a man ploughing, and another hoeing his corn; they have each muskets lashed to their backs.

14. You see a man on horseback, going from one village to another; he too is armed. You see a man removing with his family to some distant settlement; he is provided with the means of instant defence.

15. Thus lived our New England Fathers, for more than one generation. They were in a state of constant preparation for attack; always supposing that the next instant, an Indian arrow, or an Indian bullet, might be in the air, speeding with a deadly aim to the heart.

16. Nor was this all. The woods were full of wild animals. At night, the wolves would come about the houses and barns, and often carry off a sheep or a lamb. If a traveller on foot lingered in the forest till sunset, he heard the howl of these hungry beasts upon his track; or perchance a bear crossed his path, turning back with a wistful look; or a panther glared on him from the top of some aged oak, or the lonely cry of the wild cat filled his ears.

village? 13. What might be seen on a week day? 15. How did our New England Fathers live for more than one generation? 16. What

17. A people living under circumstances like these, surrounded by dangers, inured to toil, strangers to relaxation and amusement; living partly on the flesh of deer, which they hunted in the woods, and partly upon the fruits yielded by the fields to their own labor; were likely to possess great courage, sternness and decision of character. And such indeed were leading peculiarities of the New England settlers.

18. There can be no doubt that many of our blessings in New England have descended to us from the Pilgrim Fathers. The abundance of our schools, the love and reverence felt for religion, and, as consequences of these, the intelligence and morality of the people generally, are things for which we have to thank the piety and wisdom of the Puritans.

CHAP. XXII.

STATE OF NEW YORK.

1. New York is the richest and most populous of the twentyfour United States. Its territory is very extensive, but it is not so large as some of the other States. The land is in gen-

eral fertile, and some of it is exceedingly so. The means of water communication in this State, are unrivalled; in the eastern part is the Hudson river, which is navigated by sloops and steamboats for 160 miles. On the north and east, are lakes George and Champlain, the St Lawrence, and lake Ontario. On the west, is lake Erie.

2. The grand canal extends the whole length of the State, from east to west, and connects the waters of the great lakes with the Hudson. Beside these, there are in the interior, a great number of smaller streams and lakes, navigable by boats. I believe there is not a spot of the same extent on the earth, more favored by water communication, than the State of New York.

3. The produce of almost every portion of it may be easily carried to its great city, and this is the centre of commerce for the United States. The city of New York is the largest in North America, and is rapidly increasing. Albany is the seat of the State government. Utica, Rochester, Canandaigua, and Troy, are flourishing places. There are also many other towns of considerable importance.

4. The Hudson river is a noble

answer this question with the map before him. How many counties in New York? Capital? In what county is Albany? Describe the following towns: New York, Poughkeepsie, Hudson, West Point, Troy, Saratoga, Plattsburg, Utica, Ogdensburg, Canandaigua, Cooperstown, Catskill, Buffalo, Niagara, Geneva. Through what counties does the great canal run? Where does it begin? Where end? Where is the northern canal? Population of the State of New York? Extent? Greatest length of New York? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

Questions on the Map of New York.—Boundaries? Describe the Hudson River, Mohawk, Genessee, Oswego, Saranac. Describe Lake Oneida, Cayuga, Seneca, Skeneatles, Onondaga, Chataque, Champlain, Ontario, Erie, Crooked Owasco. What mountains in New York? Where are they? What great island at the southeast corner of the State? N. B. A part of this island is on the Map of Connecticut. Describe Staten Island, Counties in New York. N. B. Let the pupil

1. What of New York? Its territory? Land? Water communication? 2. The grand canal? Lakes and streams? 3. What is said about the produce? City of New York? Albany? Other

stream. It was, I believe, on this river that steam-boats were first used. They were invented by the celebrated Robert Fulton, of New York, about 25 years ago. There was but one boat on the river for a long time. But now there are a great many. Sometimes one of these boats carries 500 passengers. They are very rapid, and will go from Albany to New York, a distance of 150 miles, in about 12 hours.

5. It is delightful to go up the Hudson in one of these boats. Let us suppose that we make a trip in this State from the city of New York to Niagara Falls. Before we start, we must go about the city of New York a little. We must go up and down Broadway, which is one of the finest streets in the world.

6. We shall see a great many ladies and gentlemen very gaily dressed, and we shall see some old women sitting down on the pavements with oranges, and apples and nuts to sell. And we shall see a great many coaches and carts driving through the streets, and we must be very careful that we are not knocked down and run over by some of them.



City Hall in New York.

7. We must stop and admire the

towns? 4. The Hudson? Steam-boats? 5. The Hudson? What of Broadway? 7. City Hall?

City Hall, which is an elegant building of white marble. We must go down into Pearl Street, and there we shall see the merchants so busy and in such a hurry, that they almost run over each other. There we shall hear a great rattling of carts, and we shall see everybody walking very fast, and we shall see a great tumbling about of bales, boxes, bags, and barrels.

8. After this, we must go to Castle Garden, and see the fire-works; and having seen a great many more things, we will then go on board the steam-boat, and set out for Albany. Away we go, dashing through the water in fine style, and by and by we come to the Palisadoes, which are very high perpendicular rocks, on the west side of the river.

9. We soon come to West Point, where there is an excellent academy, in which young men receive a military education. After this, we come to the Highlands, or Catskill Mountains. These are tall blue mountains, which seem to reach to the clouds. A great many travellers ascend them, and they tell us that the prospect from them is truly sublime.

10. There is here a beautiful little cascade, where the water falls 300 feet over the rocks. These mountains afford many picturesque views. They used to be inhabited by many wild animals, such as deer, cougars, &c.

11. It is not many years since, that two huntsmen were searching for game among these mountains. Coming to a hill, they agreed to pass around it, one going one way, and the other going the other way. At length one of them heard the report of a gun. He ran to

Describe the picture. Pearl Street? 8. Castle Garden? 9. West Point? Highlands? 11. Tell the story of two huntsmen.

the spot, but could see nothing of his companion.

12. He found his dog at length, torn in pieces; and by and by saw a cougar or panther, with the body of his friend in the top of a tree. He fired a gun, and the animal dropped with his prey to the ground. The dog of the huntsman now attacked the wounded animal, but was instantly killed by a stroke of his paw.

13 The man soon procured help at a neighboring village. The party found the cougar dead, and by it the body of the unfortunate sportsman, who was also dead.

CHAP. XXIII.

NEW YORK.—CONTINUED.

1. Soon after leaving the Catskill Mountains, we shall reach Albany. This we shall find to be a large city, with near twenty thousand inhabitants. Here we will enter a canal-boat and proceed to Utica. We shall go at the rate of about four miles an hour, and we shall find the boat filled with men, women, and children.

2. On arriving at Utica, we shall be surprised to find it so large and so handsome a place. We must now go in a carriage about twelve miles north of Utica, and see Trenton Falls. A small river here tumbles over the rocks, and presents several exceedingly beautiful cascades.

3. A very sad accident happened here, a few years ago. A young lady from New York, came with some of her friends, to see the cataract. She was standing on the edge of one of the highest rocks, and her friends were at a little distance. Suddenly she disap-

peared from their view. They ran to the spot, and looked over the precipice. She had fallen to a great depth below, and was instantly killed.

4. From Utica I think we had better travel in the stage, for by this time we shall be tired of canal-boats. We must be particular, however, to stop and see the Indians at Vernon, about seventeen miles west of Utica. There are near one thousand of them, and they are the remnants of two famous tribes, that once inhabited this part of the State.

5. These Indians are called Oneidas and Tuscaroras; they are partly civilized, for they till the land, go to meeting, and live peaceably. They are, however, a degraded people, and will rather excite your pity than your respect. We shall perhaps on our way meet with other Indians; the poor remains of the celebrated tribes, which I shall have occasion to mention by and by, under the name of the Five Nations.

6. After leaving the Indians, we shall pass through Auburn, Canandaigua, and Buffalo, and at length arrive at Niagara Falls. These are formed by an immense mass of water, which comes from the great lakes, and pours over the rocks to the depth of 150 feet.

7. The roar of these waters is like thunder. Sometimes it is heard at the distance of thirty miles. The earth trembles around, as if in fear of the awful scene, and a thick cloud of vapor rises high into the air, stretching itself far away over the hills and valleys.

8. A few years ago, some people got a large ship, and placed in it a wild bear and some other animals. They then brought it near the Falls, and left it in the swift current. Many thousands of people were there to see the

1. Albany? Canal-boat? 2. Utica? Tren-

ton Falls? 3. Accident? 4. Vernon? Indians? 6. Describe Niagara Falls. 8. What

sight. The ship was instantly drawn along by the tide toward the falls; it came to the edge of the rocks, and down, down it went, broken in a thousand pieces. The poor bear went over with it. For a long time, he was buried in the water, but at length he rose upon the surface, and then he sprang ashore.

9. I will tell you another story of these falls. There was once an Indian sleeping in his canoe, on the lake. He was not far from the falls, but the canoe was tied, and he felt safe. But by and by, the string was loosed by some accident, and the canoe floated out upon the water.

10. It went silently along, and the Indian still continued to sleep. Soon the current began to take the boat toward the falls. It went more and more rapidly, and soon was near the cataract. At this moment the Indian woke; he saw his situation, and knew that it was vain to struggle against his fate. He therefore seated himself erect, wrapped his blanket closer round his body, and, folding his arms, went down with the thundering tide.

11. After staying awhile at the falls we must set out to return. We may go back to Albany by the canal, or by stage, or we may cross Lake Ontario, and go to Montreal, and thence by way of Lake Champlain to Boston. By the time we get home we shall be satisfied that the State of New York abounds in interesting objects. The western part of the State will fill us with surprise.

12. It now presents many large towns, and a multitude of thriving villages; yet it has been wholly settled within the last thirty years. Twenty years ago, there was not a house in Rochester,

and now there are thirteen thousand people there. Thirty years ago, Utica had scarcely fifty houses, and now it has, I believe, ten thousand inhabitants.

13. The growth in this part of the State, seems indeed quite magical. I recollect a story of what happened near Rochester within the last fifteen years. Two persons were travelling on horseback through the woods in winter, guided only by a horse path. The snow had recently fallen to a great depth, and they at length lost their way. They undertook to retrace their steps, but night came on, while they were still in the midst of the forest.

14. They knew they were a considerable distance from any settlement, and had no hope of reaching a house during the night. It therefore became apparent that they must spend it in the woods. But as the sun went down, the cold increased, and in a short time, it was exceedingly severe.

15. The horses were worn out with fatigue, and the travellers began to fear that they should be frozen. They looked about for the shelter of a rock, or some other place, but nothing of the kind presented itself. Their situation was now alarming; they could not proceed, and to remain idle, was certain death.

16. At length, one of them recollected that he had a small tinder-box in his pocket. This he took out, and the travellers set about making preparations to build a fire with great alacrity. They got together the bark of some trees, and some dry branches; they then began to prepare the tinder-box, but on examining it, the tinder was entirely gone.

17. There was, however, in the box
ter? 13. Tell the story of two men lost in the woods.

of a ship? 9 Story of an Indian? 11. How may we return from Niagara to Boston? What of the western part of New York? 12. Roches-

a small piece of linen rag, the edges of which were burnt. These edges were carefully rolled together, and with a trembling hand, the sparks of fire were struck upon them. Again and again the effort was made, but without success. With feelings of the deepest anxiety the travellers bent over the box. Life and death were on the issue. If the spark caught, they were safe; if not, they must perish. To such a narrow point is human fortune often reduced.

18. The flint is now struck with greater force. The fire descends in a shower, but without avail. Again, again, and again they make the trial, and they are on the point of giving themselves up in despair.

19. Another blow is struck; it is caught by the tinder, and a match is lighted; some small fibres of wood are set on fire, and in a few minutes the travellers are warming themselves by a bright blaze! Here they remained during the night. In the morning, they mounted their horses, and reached the place of their destination in safety.

CHAP. XXIV.

NEW YORK.—CONTINUED.

1. I think you cannot fail to admire the great Erie Canal, in the State of New York. It is 362 miles in length; it is 40 feet wide, and has 83 locks. It is one of the longest canals in the world, and it is certainly one of the most useful. It is frozen up in winter, but during the spring, summer, and autumn, many hundreds of boats, loaded with every kind of produce, and all sorts of goods, are passing to and fro upon it.

1. Length of the Erie canal? Width? Number of locks? Of what use is this canal? 2. When was it begun? When finished? Cost?

2. This canal was begun in 1817, and finished in 1825. It was made by the people of New York. A great many men were occupied for eight years, in digging the earth, in cutting through the rocks, and in building walls and dams for the locks. The whole cost of the canal was 8,000,000 of dollars.

3. I will now tell you the early history of this great State. In the year 1609, Henry Hudson, an English navigator, was employed by some Dutch people to go on a voyage of discovery. He came to America, and discovered the river, which now bears his name. He sailed up as far as Albany, and went in his boat a little further.

4. He saw along the banks of the river then, nothing but trees, and Indians, and wild animals. What a change has taken place in a little more than two hundred years! The island at the mouth of the river, which was then covered only with trees and shrubs, is now the seat of a mighty city; and the banks of the Hudson, then so solitary, are now sprinkled over with towns, cities, villages, and country-seats.

5. Five years after Hudson's discovery, some Dutch people came to Albany, and began there a settlement. This was in the year 1614, six years before the Pilgrims arrived at Plymouth. It was the first settlement made in New York. About the same time they built a few houses, on an island called by the Indians Manhattan, where the city of New York now stands.

6. You will observe that New York was settled by Dutch, not English people. They came from Holland or the Netherlands, and the colony was claim-

3. What of Henry Hudson? 4. What did he see? What change has taken place in 200 years? 5. What settlement in 1614? What other settlement about the same time? 6. By whom was

ed by that country. It increased rapidly.

7. In 1643, a war broke out with the Indians. The Dutch governor employed a brave captain by the name of Underhill, to go against them. He had been a soldier in Europe, and knew well how to conduct the business of war. He took with him one hundred and fifty men, and they had a great many battles with the Indians. The latter were defeated, and four hundred of them were killed during the war.

8. In 1646, a severe battle was fought with the Indians, near Horse-neck. Great numbers were killed on both sides, but the Dutch were victorious. The dead bodies were buried at a place called Strickland's Plain, and 100 years afterwards the graves were still to be seen.

9. There were some disputes between the people of New England and those of New York about territory. At length the Dutch governor went to Hartford, where he met some people sent by the New England colonies, and they came to an agreement about the land. But king Charles of England said that the Dutch had no right to any of the land, and so he granted what the Dutch had settled upon, to his brother the duke of York and Albany.

10. In 1664, the duke came with three ships to New York, and commanded the people to surrender the town. They refused at first, but in a little while they gave it up, and he took possession of it. The name of this place, which was before called Manhattan, was now changed to New York, and the place on the Hudson where the first

settlement was made, which had been called Fort Orange, was now called Albany. These names have since been retained.



The Dutch Commander surrendering New York.

11. In 1673, the city of New York was retaken by the Dutch. The fort and city were surrendered by the treachery of John Manning, the commanding officer, without firing a gun. The next year peace was concluded between England and Holland, and the colony was restored to the English.

12. The duke of York and Albany, the former proprietor, now came again into possession of the colony, and sent Sir Edmund Andros, afterwards the tyrant of New England, to govern it. He was succeeded by other governors; and in 1682, the people were permitted to meet and choose representatives.

13. These representatives assembled, and made laws, but they could not go into force, till they were ratified by the duke. This arrangement was satisfactory to the people, and the colony now felt the blessings of good government.

bany do? What did the people do? Describe the picture. What change of names now took place? 11. What happened in 1673? What took place the next year? 12. What did the Duke of York and Albany now do? What came to pass in 1682? 13. What of the representatives? What of the laws made by them?

New York settled? 7. What took place in 1643? What of captain Underhill? 8. What took place in 1646? 9. Disputes between New England and New York? What did king Charles do? 10. What did the duke of York and Al-

CHAP. XXV.

NEW YORK.—CONTINUED

1. I will now tell you about the Indians in the northern part of New York. The interior of the country was originally inhabited by five nations, called the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas, and Mohawks. These nations were friendly to the English colonies, and being very powerful, they protected the inhabitants from the French settlements in Canada.

2. At length the French governor, De La Barre, being afraid of these Indian tribes, raised an army of seventeen hundred men, and went against them. But his troops suffered very much from hardship and sickness, and many of them died.

3. Being surrounded by his enemies, he was now obliged to ask peace of the savages, whom he had come to destroy. He sent to the chiefs of the Five Nations, requesting them to come and see him, and three of them came. A circle was formed, consisting of the French officers and chiefs, and then De La Barre addressed the chief of the Onondagas as follows:—

4. 'Chief, listen to what I have to say. I am sent to this country by a great king, who commands many armies. He is good to his friends, but he is terrible to his enemies. What are ye, his friends or his enemies? I tell you that ye are his enemies.

'You protect the English, and you fight for them. You have made a league with them for peace and war. You have led them into the country, and shown them the trading-grounds

of the French, and now they carry away the furs which the French ought to get.

5. 'Such is your conduct, and that of the Five Nations; and what shall the king my master do to you for these things? He can send an army into this land, that shall scatter your tribes, as the dry leaves of autumn are scattered by the whirlwind; and this he will do, unless you change your conduct, and instead of enemies become his friends.'

6. Garrangula, the Onondaga chief, knew perfectly well the distress of the French army. He therefore heard this haughty speech with contempt. After walking six times around the circle, he made the following reply, in which you will perceive he calls De La Barre Yonnondio, and the English governor Corlear.

7. 'Yonnondio, I honor you, and the warriors that are with me honor you. Your interpreter has finished your speech; I now begin mine. My words make haste to reach your ears; hearken to them. Yonnondio, you must have believed, when you left Quebec, that the sun had consumed all the forests which render our country inaccessible to the French; or that the great lakes had overflowed their banks and surrounded our castles, so that it was impossible for us to get out of them.

8. 'Yes, Yonnondio, you must have dreamed so; and the curiosity of so great a wonder has brought you so far. Now you are undeceived; for I, and the warriors here present, are come to assure you that the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas, and Mohawks, are yet alive.

9. 'I thank you, in their name, for

1. What of the Five Nations? Their names? 2. What of De La Barre? 3. What was he obliged to do? Who did he send for? Who came?

What scene followed? 4. What did De La Barre say? 6. What of Garrangula? 7. Repeat the speech of Garrangula to La Barre 12

bringing back into their country the pipe of peace, which your predecessor received from their hands. It was happy for you that you left under ground that murdering hatchet which has been so often dyed in the blood of the French. Hear, Yonnondio, I do not sleep; I have my eyes open; and the sun which enlightens me, discovers to me a great captain at the head of a company of soldiers, who speaks as if he was dreaming. He says that he only came to smoke the great pipe of peace with the Onondagas. But Garrangula says, that he sees the contrary; that it was to knock them on the head, if sickness had not weakened the arms of the French.

10. 'We carried the English to our lakes, to trade with the Utawawas, and Quatoghies, as the Adisomdoes brought the French to our castles, to carry on a trade which the English say is theirs. We are born free; we neither depend on Yonnondio, nor Corlear. We may go when we please, and buy and sell what we please. If your allies are your slaves, use them as such; command them to receive no other but your people.

11. 'Hear, Yonnondio; what I say is the voice of all the Five Nations. When they buried the hatchet at Cadaracai, in the middle of the fort, they planted the tree of peace in the same place, to be there carefully preserved, that instead of a retreat for soldiers, the fort might be a rendezvous for merchants. Take care that the many soldiers who appear there, do not choke the tree of peace, and prevent it from covering your country and ours with its branches. I assure you that our

warriors shall dance under its leaves, and will never dig up the hatchet to cut it down, till their brother Yonnondio or Corlear shall invade the country which the Great Spirit has given to our ancestors.'

12. De La Barre heard this scornful speech with shame and rage. But knowing his weakness, he was obliged to make peace. Not long after another French governor went against these Indians with a still larger army than that of De La Barre. But the cunning Indians concealed themselves till the French were near, and then suddenly fell upon his army, and obliged him to retreat out of their country. These wars made the Five Nations hate the French, and attached them to the English colonies.

CHAP. XXVI.

NEW YORK.—CONTINUED

1. In the year 1685, the duke of York succeeded his brother Charles the Second, and became king of England, under the title of James the Second. I have told you before, that this king was hated by the English people, and he was equally disliked in the colonies.

2. He claimed absolute authority over the American people, and beside that he was a Catholic. These things caused him to be dreaded by the people. They were therefore very much rejoiced when the news came, in 1689, that he had been driven from the throne, and that William, Prince of Orange, had succeeded him.

3. Elated by this news, and stimulated by the example of the people at Boston, who had seized and imprison-

What of De La Barre? What of another French governor? What did the Indians do? What effect had these wars?

1. What took place in 1685? 2. Why did the people hate James the Second? What news

ed Andros, they began to make preparations to depose the governor, whose name was Nicholson.

4. Alarmed at this, he fled by night, and the chief magistracy was assumed by a militia captain, whose name was Leisler. He was a weak man, and managed the affairs of the colony very badly.

5. While the settlement was suffering from the troubles occasioned by Leisler's administration, war was declared between England and France. This was king William's war, of which I have told you something in the history of New-England. Count Frontenac was now governor of Canada.

6. In the winter of 1690, he sent a small party of French soldiers and Indians, to attack Albany. These concluded to destroy Schenectady first. The people of Schenectady had been warned of their danger, but they would not believe that men would come from Canada, a distance of two or three hundred miles, through the deep snows of winter, to molest them.

7. But they were fatally deceived. On a Saturday night, the enemy came near the town. They divided themselves into small parties, so that every house might be attacked at the same instant. Thus prepared, they entered the place about eleven o'clock.

8. The inhabitants were all asleep, and stillness rested upon the place. With a noiseless step, the enemy distributed themselves through the village. At a given signal, the savage war-whoop was sounded. What a dreadful cry was this to the startled fathers and mothers of this unhappy town!

9. It is scarcely possible to describe the scene that followed. The people, conscious of their danger, sprang from their beds, but were met at the door, and slaughtered by the savages. Every house was set on fire; and the Indians, rendered frantic by the wild scene, ran through the place, slaying those they chanced to meet.



Slaughter at Schenectady.

10. Sixty of the people were killed, and twentyfive were made prisoners. Some attempted to escape, but they were naked; the weather was extremely severe, and they had a considerable distance to go before they could reach a place of security. A part arrived in safety, and twentyfive lost their limbs by the cold.

11. To avenge these cruelties, with others of a similar nature committed in New England, an attack upon Canada was determined upon. An army, raised in New York and Connecticut, proceeded as far as Lake Champlain; but finding no boats to take them across, they were obliged to return. Thus the whole expedition failed, and this was attributed to the imbecility of Leisler.

12. It was about this time, that king

came in 1689? 3. What effect had this news upon the people? 4. What of Nicholson? Leisler? 5. What war now broke out? What of Count Frontenac? 6. What took place

in the winter of 1690? 7. Describe the attack upon Schenectady. Describe the picture. 11. What attack was now determined upon? What army was raised? What did they do? 12.

CHAP. XXVII.

NEW YORK.—CONTINUED.

William sent Col. Henry Slaughter to be governor of New York. But unhappily, he was totally unfit for the office. When he arrived, Leisler refused to give up his authority. He sent two messengers, however, to confer with Slaughter. These messengers were immediately seized by the governor, and put in prison as rebels.

13. This alarmed Leisler and his associates, and they attempted to escape. But he, with his son-in-law Milborne, were taken, tried and condemned to death, for high treason. But the governor refused to sign the warrant for their execution, as he did not wish to sacrifice two men, who had been rather weak, than wicked.

14. But the enemies of Leisler and Milborne contrived a plot for their destruction. They made a great feast, and invited governor Slaughter to go and partake of it. He went, and when he was intoxicated with wine, they asked him to sign the death warrant of the two prisoners. This he did, and before he had recovered his senses, Leisler and Milborne were executed. Thus, through his folly and wickedness, two men suffered an ignominious death.

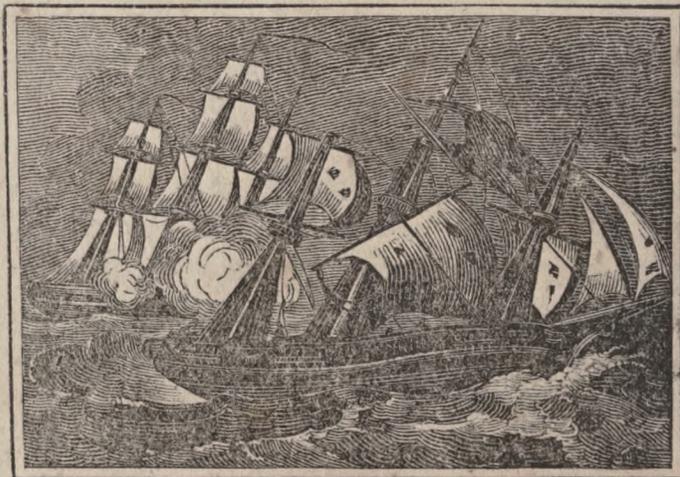
15. In 1691, governor Slaughter died. The same year a man, by the name of Peter Schuyler, at the head of three hundred Mohawk Indians, went to make an attack upon the French settlements at the north end of Lake Champlain. A body of about eight hundred men were sent from Montreal against him. With these, Schuyler and his Mohawks had several battles, in all of which they were successful. They killed more of the enemy than the whole number of their party.

What of Governor Slaughter? 13. What of Leisler? 14. In what manner was the execution of Leisler and his son-in-law effected? 15. What took place in 1691? What of Peter Schuyler?

1. In 1692, Col. Fletcher was made Governor of New York, and in 1698 he was succeeded by the Earl of Bellamont. About this time, the American seas were very much infested by pirates. These bold men attacked such ships as they met with on the ocean, plundered them of whatever they wanted, and either murdered the crew and took the ships, or sunk them both together in the deep.

2. Governor Bellamont was particularly charged by the English government, to clear the American seas, if possible, of these desperate men. But the necessary ships not being furnished, he, with some other individuals, determined to fit out a vessel on their own account, and send it against the pirates.

3. They accordingly procured a ship of war, and gave the command of it to a sea captain, whose name was Robert Kidd. But when he got out upon the water, Kidd determined to become a pirate himself. He proposed the plan to his men, and they consented to it.



Kidd attacking a Vessel.

1. What took place in 1692? What in 1698? What of the pirates? 2. What did Governor Bellamont and some others do? 3. What of Robert Kidd? Describe the picture. What was

4. So he went forth and became one of the most famous pirates that was ever known. He attacked many vessels upon the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, and after three years he returned. He burnt his ship and went to Boston, where he was seen in the streets. He was seized, and carried to England, and there he was tried, condemned, and executed.

5. I suppose you have heard a great many stories of Captain Kidd. It is said that he buried a great deal of gold in pots, somewhere along the coast. A great many attempts have been made to find this gold, but without success. I suspect that Kidd and his sailors spent all the money they got, and never buried any of it.

6. I will now pass over a considerable space of time, during which nothing very remarkable happened in this colony. Several governors had been sent from England, most of whom were utterly unworthy of the trust.

7. About the year 1736, circumstances occurred in the city of New York, which it is painful to dwell upon. Some persons of very bad character, circulated a report that the negroes of which there were a good many in the city, had formed a plot to burn the town, and make one of their number governor.

8. A great many fires had taken place, and these led the people to believe that the rumor was true. Many of the negroes were arrested and put in prison. Other accusers now came forward, and so strong was the prejudice against the negroes, that when the trial came on, all the lawyers offered their services to plead against them.

9. Thus left without defence, these unhappy people were all condemned.

Fourteen were burned to death, eighteen were hung, and seventyone were transported out of the country. It is gratifying to feel sure that, in our day, the weakest and most defenceless are not exposed to such cruelty and injustice.

10. In 1743, George Clinton was sent over as governor of the colony. He was warmly received by the people, and his administration was on the whole acceptable. In 1745, during George the Second's war, New York was much distressed by the incursions of the Indians.

11. Saratoga was destroyed, and other parts of the colony suffered very much. Some of the Indians came to Albany, and concealing themselves in the neighborhood, laid in wait to take prisoners. One savage, bolder than the rest, called Tolmonwilemon, came within the city itself, and carried off people by night.

12. In 1746, New York united with the eastern colonies in an expedition against Canada, but the project totally failed. The next year, the welcome news of peace between England and France arrived, and the colony was relieved from the distresses brought upon them by the war.

13. Thus I have told you of some of the principal events in the history of New York, up to the time of the French war, which commenced in 1755. From that time the colonies acted in concert; and I shall therefore leave the separate history of New York here, and give you a view of what remains, in the general account of the French war and the American revolution.

negroes were burnt? How many hung? How many transported? 10. What happened in 1743? In 1745? 11. What of Saratoga? What of Tolmonwilemon? 12. What took place in 1746? What news came the next year?

the fate of Kidd? 7. What occurred in the city of New York in the year 1736? 9. How many

CHAP. XXVIII.

STATE OF NEW JERSEY

1. I will now tell you about New Jersey. It is not a large State, but in travelling through it we shall see many things that are interesting. We must start at New York in a steam-boat and cross the North River to Jersey city. This is done in a few minutes. Then we get into the stage, and ride nine miles, over a very level road to Newark.

2. This is a beautiful town, with several handsome churches, and many handsome houses. We shall see many of the people busy in making shoes, gigs, coaches, stages and wagons. Newark is the largest town in the State.

3. We must not omit to make an excursion from Newark to Patterson, to see the Passaic Falls. These are formed by the Passaic River, which rolls over the rocks to the depth of 72 feet. The spectacle is very brilliant and beautiful.

4. Some years ago, a gentleman and his wife from New York were standing on the rock, which hangs over the cataract. The lady suddenly became dizzy, and fell over the awful precipice. She was instantly killed by the fall. Patterson is a brisk manufacturing town, situated near the cataract.

5. In an hour and a half after leaving this place we shall arrive at Elizabethtown. In passing along, we shall observe many fine orchards; and if it

Questions on the Map.—Boundaries? Describe the Raritan River, Delaware, Passaic. Counties in New Jersey? Their names? Capital? In what county is Trenton? Describe the following towns: Elizabethtown, Newark, Princeton, New Brunswick, Morris, Patterson, Bordentown, Burlington. Population of New Jersey? Extent? Greatest length of New Jersey? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

is autumn, we shall see abundance of very excellent apples. The cider made here is very celebrated.

6. On arriving at Elizabethtown, we shall be struck with the beauty of the place. After looking about us, the stage driver, who is very much in a hurry on this road, will blow his horn: the passengers will jump into the stage, and away we go.

7. We shall pass through Brunswick, and at length reach Princeton. Here we shall observe a large building, with a green lawn in front, covered with shady trees. This is Princeton College; it is quite celebrated, and a great many young men are educated here.

8. After leaving Princeton, we shall soon arrive at Trenton, which is beautifully situated on the Delaware. We shall here notice a fine bridge across this river. I think we had better take the steam-boat now, and go down the Delaware to Philadelphia.

9. We shall be delighted with this part of our journey. On both sides of the river, we shall see many very handsome towns. Those on the west side belong to Pennsylvania, those on the east, to New Jersey. Among other interesting things, we shall see Joseph Bonaparte's house, at Bordentown.

10. Joseph Bonaparte is a brother of the famous Napoleon Bonaparte. His house is large, and quite different from other houses in this country. He has a very lofty tower on his grounds, called an Observatory. From the top of this, there is a very extensive and beautiful prospect.

1. What of New Jersey? How do you go from New York to Newark? 2. What of Newark? 3. What of the Passaic Falls? 4. Patterson? 5. What of orchards? Apples? Cider? 6. Elizabethtown? 7. What of Princeton College? 8. Trenton? 9. What of Joseph Bonaparte's house? 10. Who is Joseph Bona-

11. Soon after passing Bordentown, we shall come to Burlington, and then in a little while we shall reach Philadelphia. If we go into the market at Philadelphia, we shall observe large quantities of the finest apples, pears and peaches, and sweet potatoes and other vegetables, that we have ever seen. Many of these things are brought from that part of New Jersey which lies on the Delaware, opposite to Philadelphia.

12. If we stay some time in the State of New Jersey, we shall observe that the people differ considerably from those in New England. This difference is owing to the difference of origin. The people of New England are descended entirely from the English, while those of New Jersey are the mixed descendants of English, Dutch, Danes, Germans and Swedes.

13. The first settlement in this State was made by the Danes in 1624. Some Dutch and Swedes soon after made settlements in the territory; the population was, however, very small. In 1664, New Jersey came with New York into the hands of the English. The next year, a settlement was made at Elizabethtown, by three men who purchased the land of the Indians.



Settlement of Elizabethtown.

14. The same year Sir George Carteret was appointed governor, and the colony received the name of Jersey, in compliment to him, who was a native of the island of Jersey, on the southern coast of England.

15. In 1676, the province was divided into East and West Jersey, and so continued until 1702. The government was then surrendered to Queen Anne of England, and East and West Jersey were united, under the title of New Jersey. From this date to the Revolutionary War, very little happened in this colony, the story of which would be interesting to you.

16. The wars with the French and Indians, which afflicted New England and New York so much, did not reach New Jersey. But during the Revolutionary War, this State was occupied by the English and American armies, and it consequently met with losses, and suffered great distress. Of these things I shall tell you more by and by.

17. I will however tell you of one battle now. This took place at Monmouth in the summer of 1778, between the Americans under Washington, and the British under Sir Henry Clinton. The two armies fought terribly, and hundreds were killed on both sides. The weather was hot, and a woman, named Molly Pitcher, was engaged in carrying water to some soldiers who were managing one of the cannon. By and by, her husband, who was among them, was killed. Molly immediately took his place at the gun, and

sey? Their origin? 13. First settlement in New Jersey? What occurred in 1664? When was Elizabethtown settled? 14. What of Sir George Carteret? Why was the territory called New Jersey? 15. What took place in 1676? What happened in 1702? 16. What of New Jersey during the Revolutionary war? 17. Battle of Monmouth?

parte? His observatory? 11. Market at Philadelphia? 12. What of the people of New Jer-

fought like a trooper. She was called Major Molly ever after.

CHAP. XXIX.

STATE OF PENNSYLVANIA.

1. This is a large, wealthy and flourishing State. Our travels through it will afford us much gratification. We must examine Philadelphia in the first place. In my opinion, it is the handsomest city in the United States. The streets are all straight, and cross each other in a regular manner.

2. We shall find many interesting objects in the city. The Bank of the United States is built of white marble, and is one of the most beautiful edifices in the world. The Arcade is a very curious building, in which there are a great many shops. In the upper part of this building is Peale's Museum.

3. This is a most interesting collection. There are hundreds of stuffed birds and animals, which look as if they were really alive. There are grisly bears, and deer, and elks, and prodigious great serpents, and birds with beautiful feathers, and cranes, with legs as long as a man; and there are bugs and butterflies, and Indian tomahawks, and a multitude of other things.

Questions on the Map.—Boundaries? Describe the Delaware, Susquehanna, Schuylkill, Juniata, Lehigh, Ohio, Alleghany. What ranges of mountains in Pennsylvania? Through what counties do they run? Describe Delaware Bay. How many counties in Pennsylvania? Which lie west of the Alleghanies? Which East? Capital? In what county is Harrisburg? In what county is Philadelphia? *Ans.* In the county of Philadelphia. Describe the following towns: Lancaster, Harrisburg, Pittsburg, Chester, Wilkesbarre, Huntingdon, Bedford, Carlisle, York, Easton, Population of Pennsylvania? Extent? Greatest length of Pennsylvania? Greatest width? Average length? Average width?

4. But the most wonderful of all is the skeleton of the Mastodon, or Mammoth. These bones were found in the State of New York; the animal to which they belonged must have been as large as a small house. No animals of this kind now live in America, or anywhere else. But long before the white people came to this country, it is certain that they roamed through the forests of America. Some of them must have been at least four times as large as the largest elephant.



Skeleton of the Mastodon at Philadelphia.

5. After leaving the museum, we should go and see the Fairmount water-works, about two or three miles out of town. These are situated on the Schuylkill river. There are here several large wheels, which are so contrived as to force the water from the river up into a reservoir on the top of a high hill. From thence the water flows to the city, and supplies the whole town. This is a most useful invention, and one that may well excite our admiration.

6. We must now leave Philadelphia,

1. What of Pennsylvania? Philadelphia? 2. Bank of the United States? Arcade? 3. Peale's Museum? What is to be seen there? 4. What of the Mastodon? Describe the picture. 5. Fairmount water-works? What is the use of

and set out for Pittsburg. We shall travel over excellent roads with fine stone bridges, and we shall see a great many large farms, with abundance of very fine cattle. We shall pass through Lancaster, which is one of the most beautiful towns in the United States, and Harrisburg, where the Legislature meets to make laws for the State.

7. As we pass along we shall notice a great many Quakers, and I think you will like them very much. They are very friendly, and dress in a singular manner. You will meet with a good many people here who can talk nothing but German. There are indeed a great many German people, and some entire villages are composed of Germans, and their descendants. They have almanacs, newspapers, and some books printed in their language.

8. At length, you will reach the Alleghany mountains. These consist of a great many separate ranges. You will first go over one, and then another, and another, and another. Some of them are very high, and the sides are exceedingly steep.

9. After travelling a whole day, you will find that you have passed over these lofty mountains. You will be much fatigued, and I think you will be glad that you have got over them, for they have a very desolate and gloomy appearance. These mountains used to be inhabited by many wild animals; deer and elk are still found there, as well as wolves and foxes. The wild cat and cougar, are also occasionally met with.

10. After having passed the Alleghanies you will arrive at Pittsburg. This

them? 6. What of roads and bridges? Farms? Cattle? Lancaster? Harrisburg? 7. Quakers? Germans? 8. Alleghany Mountains? 9. Wild animals? 10. Pittsburg? Coal? 11. Lehigh

is a great manufacturing place. As you approach it, you will observe a cloud of black smoke rising over the town, and you will notice that almost all the buildings are blackened with the coal-smoke. Coal is so very abundant here, that you may buy a bushel of it for a few cents.

11. We shall hardly have time to set down in this little book, all the interesting things to be seen in Pennsylvania. There are the Lehigh and Schuylkill coal-mines, where the people get a great deal of coal, which is carried down in little cars, on rail-roads, to the canals, and then put into boats, and carried to Philadelphia and other places.

12. There are several fine canals, and some of the most beautiful rivers in the world. The banks of the Schuylkill, the Juniata, and the Susquehanna, are truly enchanting during the summer. On the whole, we shall find Pennsylvania a most interesting State. It is not so cold there in winter as in New England. Many parts of it are fertile and highly cultivated, and the comforts and luxuries of life are very cheap and abundant.

CHAP. XXX.

PENNSYLVANIA.—CONTINUED.

1. I will now tell you the history of Pennsylvania, but I must begin with William Penn, for he was the chief instrument of its settlement. He was the son of a British admiral, and lived in London. He was educated as a lawyer, but he joined the Quakers, then an obscure and persecuted sect.

and Schuylkill coal-mines? 12. Canals? Rivers? Climate? Soil? Comforts and luxuries of life?

What of William Penn? 2. What took

2. In 1681, King Charles granted to him a large tract of land, between New Jersey and Maryland. This included Pennsylvania and Delaware. In the fall of the same year, a good many persons, chiefly Quakers, to whom he had sold some of the land, set out in three ships, and came to America. These people settled on the Delaware river, near where Philadelphia now stands.

3. These brought with them a letter from Penn to the Indians. In this he said to them, 'that the great God had been pleased to make him concerned in their part of the world, and that the king of the country where he lived had given him a great province therein; but that he did not desire to enjoy it without their consent; that he was a man of peace, and that the people whom he sent were men of the same disposition; and if any difference should happen between them, it might be adjusted by an equal number of men chosen on both sides.'

4. In the fall of 1682, Penn himself came to the colony with two thousand emigrants. While he was in the country, he met some of the Indian Chiefs, and made a treaty with them.



Penn making a Treaty with the Indians.

His mild and gentle manners made a great impression on the savages.

5. He walked with them, sat with them on the ground, and ate with them of their roasted acorns and hominy. At this they expressed great delight, and soon began to show how they could hop and jump. Penn, it is said, then got up and began to hop too, and soon showed that he could beat them all. Whether this is true or not, I cannot say; but it is certain the Indians long remembered him with feelings of love and veneration.

6. Penn also marked out the plan of a great city, to which he gave the name of Philadelphia; by which is meant 'the city of brotherly love.' Before the end of the year, this place contained eighty buildings. In 1684, Penn returned to England, leaving the province in a happy and prosperous condition.

7. No part of America was settled more rapidly than Pennsylvania. The soil was fertile; the climate mild and agreeable; the deer, and other wild animals were abundant. The government, too, arranged by Penn, was just and liberal, giving perfect freedom to every man to worship God in his own way.

8. Thus at peace among themselves, the Indians being made their friends by justice and gentleness, the people of this colony afforded a striking contrast to the less fortunate settlements in the north and east. Attracted by the favorable circumstances I have mentioned,

when was the first settlement in Pennsylvania made? 3. What did Penn say in his letter to the Indians? 4. What took place in 1682? What of Penn and the Indians? Describe the picture. 6. What great city did Penn lay the foundation of? When did Penn return to England? 7. Why was Pennsylvania very rapidly settled? 8. In what respects did Pennsylvania differ from the northern and eastern colonies?

What took place in 1681? What did the grant to Penn include? What took place in the fall of 1681? Where and

numerous emigrants flocked to Pennsylvania; and in four years after Penn received the grant, the province contained twenty settlements, and the city of Philadelphia two thousand inhabitants.

9. In 1699, Penn returned to the province. He found some uneasiness among the people. To remove this, he gave them a new charter in 1701. This was submitted to the assembly chosen by the people, and accepted. But the inhabitants in that part of the province which now forms the State of Delaware did not like the charter, and refused to accept it.

10. They were therefore separated from Pennsylvania, and had a distinct assembly chosen by the people, who made their laws. The same governor, however presided over Pennsylvania and Delaware.

11. Penn soon returned to England, and never visited America again. He died in 1718, leaving behind him the character of a truly pious and good man. He was twice imprisoned in England, by the government, for his religious opinions; and his enemies accused him of very wicked conduct. But he lived to see every suspicion wiped away from his reputation; and his life teaches us that the world fails not to honor a man of kindness, piety and truth.

12. His colony continued to flourish, and its increase in population was unexampled. The Indians, conciliated by kindness, remained for seventy years at peace with the inhabitants; and thus, until the French war, nothing more oc-

What was the condition of the colony in four years after Penn received the grant? 9. What did Penn do in 1699? What in 1701? What of the people of Delaware? 10. What of the government of Delaware? 11. When did Penn return finally to England? When did he die? What of his life and character? 12. What of his colony? Indians?

curred in Pennsylvania that would interest you.

CHAP. XXXI.

STATE OF DELAWARE.

1. This is the smallest State in the Union, except Rhode Island; but it is beautifully situated along the western shore of Delaware Bay, and, like every other part of our country, affords interesting topics of geography and history. In our travels through it, we shall observe some of the finest wheat-fields in the world.

2. At Wilmington, on the Brandywine, we shall see extensive manufactories of paper, and some of the best flour-mills in the country. We shall notice a very useful canal, crossing the northern part of the State from Delaware Bay to Chesapeake Bay. We shall pass Dover, a pleasant little town, which is the seat of government; and if we proceed to Lewistown, at the southern point of the State, we shall see the people engaged in making salt from sea-water.

3. At the mouth of Delaware Bay, and near Cape Henlopen, we shall observe an immense wall of stone in the sea, called a Breakwater. This was built by the government of the United States, to protect vessels which may be at anchor in the bay, from the waves that roll in from the ocean during storms,

Questions on the Map.—Boundaries? What bay east of Delaware? Number of Counties? Their names? Capital? In what county is Dover? Describe Wilmington, Newcastle. Where is Cape Henlopen? Cape May? Extent of Delaware? Population?

1. What of Delaware? Wheat-fields? 2. Wilmington? Canal? Dover? Lewistown? 3. What of the Breakwater at the mouth of Del-

and from the ice that comes floating down from the rivers in the spring.

4. This Breakwater is near three quarters of a mile in length, and is truly a grand and useful work. The stone for it was brought from a great distance—some of it from Boston, and some from other places.

5. In the Revolutionary War, the people of this little State put forth their whole strength for the cause of liberty. The Delaware regiment was reckoned the finest in the whole army. In the famous battle of Camden, in South Carolina, 1780, these, with some Maryland troops, were commanded by a French officer, named De Kalb.—This brave man was wounded in eleven places, and died on the field. He was so impressed with the gallant conduct of his Delaware and Maryland soldiers, that with his dying breath he expressed his regard for them.

6. But it is not my intention to tell you of the Revolutionary War now. I must take you back to a much earlier date. More than two hundred years ago, there lived in Sweden, a famous king named Gustavus Adolphus. Under his patronage, some Swedes and Finns, or Finlanders, came to America, and landed at Cape Henlopen, in 1627. It was a beautiful spot, covered with green trees, beneath which the wild deer with their young fawns were sporting. The emigrants were so charmed with the place, that they called it Paradise Point.

7. They now proceeded farther up the bay, and had some intercourse with

the Indians. The latter treated them kindly, and sold them the land on both sides of the water. The settlers now established themselves near Wilmington, and called the country New Sweden.

8. But the colony was not permitted to enjoy its fine lands and delightful climate in peace. The Dutch claimed the territory, and after annoying them in various ways, finally built a fort at New Castle. A man by the name of Risingh, was then governor of the Swedish colony.

9. One day he proposed to the commander of the Dutch fort, to pay him a friendly visit. This was accepted, and Risingh went, accompanied by thirty men. They were received with kindness, and treated with great hospitality. But disregarding this, they treacherously took possession of the fort, and made prisoners of the garrison.

10. The governor of New York at this time, was Peter Stuyvesant, whom history describes as possessing a pretty hot temper. Such a man was not likely to permit the treachery of Risingh to go unavenged. So he fitted out an armament which went against the Swedes in several vessels, in the year 1655.

11. There was considerable fighting; but the Dutch were victorious, and having taken the Swedish forts, allowed a few of the inhabitants to remain, and sent the rest prisoners to Holland. The settlement continued in the hands of the Dutch till 1664, when it came into the possession of the English, with the surrender of New York.

a rare Bay? 5. What of the Revolution? The Delaware regiment? Battle of Camden? 6. What of Gustavus Adolphus? When did the first settlers arrive in Delaware? Who were they? What of Cape Henlopen? What did the emigrants call it? 7. What of the Indians? Where did

the emigrants settle? What did they call the country? 8. What of the Dutch? 9. What did the Swedish governor do? 10. Who was now governor of the colony of New York? What was done in 1655? 11. What of the Delaware colony from this time to 1664? What happened

12. In 1682, the territory was purchased by William Penn, and until 1703, formed a part of Pennsylvania. At that time, it was partially separated, having a distinct assembly chosen by the people, though the same governor that ruled over Pennsylvania, ruled also over Delaware. The colony remained in this situation till 1775, when it became an independent State.

CHAP. XXXII.

STATE OF MARYLAND.

1. Maryland is divided into two parts by Chesapeake Bay, called the Eastern and Western Shores. In travelling through this State, we shall find that the land on both sides of the bay is generally level, or moderately uneven. If we proceed into the more western parts, between the Potomac river and Pennsylvania, we shall find hills, mountains and valleys.

2. We shall not be long in Maryland, before we discover that there are a great many negro slaves there. These slaves are owned by the white people, who buy and sell them at pleasure. The slaves are not at liberty to choose their employments, like other people; they are obliged by their owners to remain in slavery, and labor for them as they direct. They can hold no property; they own no houses; even their children are not their own. These,

in 1664? 12. What in 1682? What of Delaware between 1682 and 1703? What of Delaware after 1703? What took place in 1775?

Questions on the Map.—Boundaries? By what bay is Maryland separated into two parts? What counties in the eastern part? What in the western? Describe the Susquehannah, Potomac. Capital? In what county is Annapolis? Describe Baltimore, Fredericktown.

too, are slaves, and may be taken away and sold at the pleasure of the white people.

3. In the States north of Maryland, slavery is not authorized by law. The people there consider it a great evil, and have taken care to abolish it. But in Maryland, and the States south of it, the laws permit people to hold slaves. Many persons even there, believe it wrong, but it has been long practised: there are many thousands of slaves in the country, and it is therefore not easy to devise any plan by which they can safely be set free. It is to be hoped, however, that before many years, no such thing as slavery will exist in our country.

4. We shall observe many fine wheat-fields in Maryland, and many plantations of tobacco. This plant is cultivated in rows, like Indian corn, and it has broad leaves like a mullein. We shall notice that almost all the labor in the fields is performed by the negro slaves.

5. You will be delighted with Baltimore. It is larger than Boston, and has many interesting objects in it. There is a tall monument with a statue of Washington on the top, that you cannot fail to admire. The Roman Catholic Cathedral is one of the finest churches in America. When you go into it, you must be particular to take off your hat, for the Catholics reverence their churches very much, and expect others who enter them to do so too. You will see several beautiful pictures in this church.

1. Face of the country in M.? 2. What of negro slaves? 3. What of the States north of Maryland? What of Maryland and the States south of it? 4. Wheat-fields in M.? Tobacco? Who cultivate the land in M.? 5. What of Baltimore? A monument? Catholic Cathedral?

6. After seeing the rest of the city, you should go to Howard Street, where you will notice a great many wagons, loaded with flour. Baltimore is the greatest flour market in the world. Thousands and thousands of barrels are brought here every year from various parts of Maryland, and from Delaware, Pennsylvania, and Virginia. It is then sent in ships to New York, Boston, Charleston, and various foreign countries.

7. But the most curious thing at Baltimore is the Rail-road. I must tell you that there is a great trade between Baltimore and the States west of the Alleghany Mountains. The western people buy a great many goods at Baltimore, and send in return a great deal of western produce. There is, therefore, a vast deal of travelling back and forth, and hundreds of teams are constantly occupied in transporting goods and produce to and from market.



Rail-road Car.

8. Now in order to carry on all this business more easily, the people are building what is called a rail-road. This consists of iron bars laid along the ground and made fast, so that carriages with small wheels may run along

6. Howard Street? What of Baltimore as a flour-market? 7. Trade of B.? 8. What is the object of the rail-road building from Baltimore

upon them with facility. In this way, one horse will be able to draw as much as ten horses on a common road. A part of this rail-road is already done, and if you choose to take a ride upon it, you can do so. You will mount a car something like a stage, and then you will be drawn along by two horses, at the rate of twelve miles an hour.

9. Beside Baltimore, there are several pleasant towns in Maryland. Annapolis, the seat of government, has a handsome State-house, and Fredericktown is a pleasant place.

10. The climate of Maryland is very agreeable. The winter is never severe, and often when the rivers and lakes of New England are frozen over, the creeks and inlets along Chesapeake Bay, are covered with flocks of wild water-fowl.

CHAP. XXXIII.

MARYLAND.—CONTINUED.

1. Baltimore is situated on the river Petapsco, which enters Chesapeake Bay, about fourteen miles from the city. On the northern side of this river, is a piece of land running into the bay, called North Point. You should visit this spot, for a famous battle was fought there on the 12th of September, 1814. At that time, our country was at war with England. A great many English soldiers and ships were sent over to fight with our people.

2. On the twentythird of August, they made an attack on the city of Washington, and as there were few

to the western country? Describe the rail-road. Describe the picture. 9. What of Annapolis? Fredericktown? 10. Climate of M.?

1. What of Baltimore? The Petapsco? North Point? 2. What took place on the twen-

American troops there, they burnt the capital, and several other public buildings, and the President's house. The President himself was obliged to ride very fast, to keep out of their way.

3. After they had done this, the British went to attack Baltimore. They entered the mouth of the Patuxent with a fleet of sixty ships, and on the day abovementioned, six thousand troops were landed at North Point.

4. Now the people of Baltimore, were not in the humor for having their city taken by the British soldiers; so there was a great bustle in the streets. Men were seen running to and fro, with muskets in their hands, and countenances full of resolution. The merchants left their counting rooms; the lawyers, their offices; the mechanics, their various employments; the drums beat; the fifes screamed; and, assembled under the command of their leaders, the bravest and best men in the city went down to meet the enemy.

5. They met, and there was hard fighting. The cannon bellowed, and the musquetry rent the air with a continued roar. Many brave men fell on both sides. But the Americans, being few in number, were obliged to retreat. General Ross, the British leader, was killed; and finding by the experiment they had made, that the people of Baltimore were inclined to treat them too roughly, the British went away, ships, sailors, soldiers and all.

6. Such are the brave deeds which have recently taken place in Maryland. Let us now contemplate the period, when the white people first settled upon these shores.

tythird of August 1814? 3. What took place at North Point on the twelfth of September? 4. What took place in Baltimore before the battle? 5. What took place when the British and Ameri-

7. Two hundred years ago, the Catholics in England were persecuted as the Puritans had been before. One of them, Lord Baltimore, determined therefore to come to America. Accordingly he went to Virginia, which had now been settled some time. But he found the people there as little disposed to treat the Catholics kindly as in England. So he went back to England, and begged the king to give him a charter of the land lying on Chesapeake Bay, then occupied only by the Indians.

8. This request was granted, but before the business was completed, he died. His son Cecil, also called Lord Baltimore, determined to carry into effect the plans of his father. So he obtained the grant for himself, and in 1634, sent his brother, Leonard Calvert, with two hundred Catholic emigrants, to settle upon the land on the Chesapeake.

9. When they arrived at the mouth of the Potomac river, they found an Indian village there, called Yoamaco. This village they purchased of the savages, and thus obtained good shelter, till they could build better houses. They also acquired some good land, which had been cultivated. Their situation was therefore very comfortable.

10. The colonists found plenty of wild deer in the woods, and abundance of fish along the shores of the bay. The sea-fowl were also numerous. There were countless flocks of ducks, skimming along the water, and settling down around the islands; and there were numbers of wild geese at the mouths of the creeks and rivers.

cans met at North Point? Describe the battle. What followed? 7. What of the Catholics two hundred years ago? What of Lord Baltimore? Virginia? 8. What of Cecil, Lord Baltimore? Leonard Calvert? 9. What did the emigrants do on arriving at the mouth of the Potomac? 10.

11. The colony flourished, as well on account of its pleasant situation, as the liberal policy of its government. These Catholics did not persecute those who differed with them in religious opinion. Lord Baltimore, and Roger Williams, of Rhode Island, seem to have discovered about the same time, that every man has a right to worship God as he pleases. Thus Rhode Island and Maryland, at this early date, enjoyed the blessings of entire religious freedom.

12. Yet the colony, whose story I am now telling you, had its share of troubles. A man by the name of Clayborne, stirred up the Indians to hostility, and they made war on the settlers. This continued for several years, and the people suffered great distress. In 1645, the same Clayborne induced some of the settlers to rebel against their rulers, and Calvert the governor was obliged to fly to Virginia. But the next year, the revolt was suppressed. Governor Calvert returned, and the colony once more enjoyed a state of peace.

13. In 1666, the colony contained about 12,000 inhabitants. In 1676, Lord Baltimore, the founder of the colony, died; leaving behind him the enviable character of a wise and good man. He was succeeded by his son Charles, as proprietor of the colony, and he displayed the same amiable qualities as his father had done.

14. In 1689, king William assumed the government of the colony; but in

What did the Colonists find? Wild fowl? 11. Did the Colony of M. flourish? Why? Lord Baltimore and Roger Williams? Maryland and Rhode Island? 12. What of the Indians? What took place in 1645? 13. How many inhabitants in M. in 1666? What in 1676? Character of Lord B.? What of Charles, Lord Baltimore? 14. What took place in 1689? What in 1716? What in 1775?

1716, it was restored to Lord Baltimore, and continued in the family till 1775. The people then engaged with the other colonies in the revolution, and Lord Baltimore's claims ceased.

CHAP. XXXIV.

MIDDLE STATES.

1. I have now given you a brief sketch of the geography and history of the five Middle States. These are classed together merely on account of their situation, and not because of any similarity either in the history, or the manners of the people. They were settled at different times by people from different countries, who came for different purposes;—some for trade; some to improve their fortunes; and some for religious peace.

2. There is no such resemblance between the people of these five States, their manners, customs and opinions, as between the people of New England. On the contrary, we shall find great variety among the inhabitants, their houses, dress, manner of tilling the land, thoughts, feelings, and opinions, in different parts of this section of the Union.

3. If you will look at the map, you will observe, that the three largest cities, and three of the finest rivers in the Union, are in these States. New

Map of the Middle States.—Boundaries of each of the five Middle States? Distance and direction of the several capitals of the Middle States, from the city of New York? What three great cities in the Middle States? What three great rivers? Describe them. Extent of the Middle States? Population?

1. What of the Middle States? Settlement of the Middle States. When and by whom was each of the Middle States settled? 2. What of the people of the Middle States? Houses, dress, &c.?

York is the largest city on the American continent, and the Hudson is one of the noblest navigable rivers in the world.

4. In point of soil and climate, these States doubtless surpass all the others situated upon the Atlantic. They are generally very fertile, producing grain and fruit in the greatest perfection and abundance. They are equally removed from the severe winters of the north, and the burning summers of the south.

5. Thus happily placed in the heart of the country, they are growing in population and wealth. Previous to the French war, which has been before mentioned, these States never acted in concert. They were then separate colonies, with separate interests. They have therefore no common history until the year 1756, when they united with the other colonies, to resist the French and Indians. The history of that war will be given hereafter.

CHAP. XXXV.

STATE OF VIRGINIA.

1. We have now reached Virginia, the oldest and largest State in the Union. We shall not find as good roads, nor as good stages here, as in the Middle and Eastern States, nor shall we meet with so many handsome houses, nor shall

3. What of New York? The Hudson? 4. Soil of the Middle States? Climate? 5. Growth of the Middle States? What of the Middle States previous to the French war?

Questions on Map of the Southern States.— Boundaries of Virginia? Describe the Rappahannock, James, York. What Mountains in Virginia? How does the blue ridge cross the State? How does the Alleghany range cross the State? Capital? Describe Norfolk, Petersburg, Jamestown

we, at the distance of every few miles, come to a pleasant little village.

2. We shall remark that the houses are scattered, and that the land, instead of being divided into small farms, is laid out in extensive plantations of several hundred acres each. Instead of meadows, apple orchards, and small patches of rye, Indian corn, and flax, we shall see vast plains covered with crops of tobacco, wheat, and hemp. We shall see, that the whole labor of the field is performed on these plantations by the slaves. The planters themselves have large houses, and live in excellent style.

3. In travelling through the country we shall not meet with many taverns; it may therefore be convenient to stop for a night at a planter's house. We may be sure of a hearty welcome, and the liberal host will take nothing in payment. If it is autumn, he will probably invite us to go the next day in chase of deer. There are a great many of these animals still in Virginia, and the planters hunt them on horseback, with packs of hounds. We must take care that our travels do not take place in the summer, for then it is very hot and unhealthy in Virginia. We had better go in the winter, and thus, while New England is buried up in snow drifts, we may travel at our ease in the Southern States.

4. Virginia may be divided into three parts. That which lies toward the sea coast is level and sandy; that which lies east of the blue ridge is hilly, and that which lies west of it is mountainous. In the western part of the State,

1. What of Virginia? 2. Houses and lands in V.? 3. Labor? Planters? What if we stop over night at a planter's house? What of deer? 4. How may Virginia be divided? Describe these three divisions. What of the western

there are fewer slaves, and some of the white people labor on the farms.

5. There are several remarkable curiosities in this State. One is a natural bridge, composed of rocks; it is 250 feet high, and a little river flows beneath it at the bottom. Wier's Cave is an astonishing work of nature. It consists of several spacious caverns in the rocks, more than 2000 feet in length. The sides are covered over with beautiful crystals. If you enter the cave with a light, it is reflected by these crystals, and you will be astonished at the wonderful brilliancy of the scene.

6. There are several other caves in Virginia, one of which is called the Blowing Cave. From this, a stream of air issues so powerful as to blow down the grass and weeds, to the distance of sixty feet from the mouth.

7. In the western part of the State, near the Ohio, is a remarkable mound of earth, filled with human bones. It is 70 feet high, and 300 feet across at the bottom. This wonderful hill must have been built long before the white people came to America.

It is probable, indeed, that it was constructed many ages since, even before the race of savages we are acquainted with, occupied the country. It was no doubt the work of a people, who lived, flourished, and passed away, leaving no record behind them, but these mounds, to tell that they ever existed.

8. Richmond, the seat of government in Virginia, is a handsome place, and the largest town in the State. Norfolk has a great deal of trade, Lynchburg, on James river, has some manufactures, and deals extensively in the

part of the State? 5. Natural Bridge? Wier's Cave? 6. Blowing Cave? 7. Mound of earth? 8. Richmond? Norfolk? Lynchburg? Flour, hemp and tobacco?

produce of the country. Great quantities of flour, hemp, and tobacco, the staples of Virginia, are sent down James river to Richmond, from this place.

CHAP. XXXVI.

VIRGINIA.—CONTINUED.

1. Before we leave Virginia, we must visit Monticello, the seat of the late Thomas Jefferson. He was once President of the United States, as I shall have occasion by and by to tell you. He died on the 4th of July, 1825.

2. There is another place in this State, that we must not fail to visit. This is a pleasant hill called Mount Vernon. Here General Washington lived, and at a little distance from the house where he dwelt a tomb, in which his body repose. I shall have many things to tell you of this great and good man. He died in the year 1799. I recollect when the event happened, though I was then a child. Such was the sorrow of the people when the sad news came, that the bells were tolled, and everybody went into mourning.

3. In the southeastern part of the State, is a place called Jamestown. It is on a little island in James river, about thirty miles from its mouth. The place is now in ruins, but if you visit it you will desire to know its history. An ancient churchyard, the crumbled spire of a church, a few old houses, and traces of rude fortifications, will make you feel that there is an interesting story connected with them.

4. The story is indeed interesting,

1. Monticello? Thomas Jefferson? 2. Mount Vernon? Washington? 3. Jamestown?

and I will now tell you a part of it; I am sorry that I have not room for the whole. I must commence at a period when as yet no white people dwelt in America. This vast country, now occupied by twentyfour States, and 12,000,000 of inhabitants, was then a wide hunting-ground for the Indians. They alone dwelt in its valleys, roamed over its hills and mountains, and sailed upon its rivers and bays.

5. The Spaniards had penetrated into South America, and found countries abounding in silver and gold. Stories of their success were circulated throughout Europe, and the spirit of adventure entered into many minds. In England, a company was formed for making a settlement in North America, and having obtained a grant of land, they despatched three ships with 105 adventurers, for the new world.

6. After sailing across the Atlantic, a storm drove them to the mouth of Chesapeake Bay. On approaching the land, they discovered a large and beautiful river, which they determined to ascend. They had several interviews with the Indians, who received them kindly.



Interview with the Indians on James River.

One day, as some of them were ashore, an Indian chief came to them, with a bow and arrow in one hand, and a pipe in the other, and asked them for what purpose they came.

7. They replied by signs, that they wished to settle on the lands in peace, and so the chief received them well. Another chief offered them as much land as they desired, and sent them a deer, as a mark of good will.

8. On the 13th of May, 1607, the emigrants landed and began their establishment. It was on an island in the river. The river they called James river, and the village, they called Jamestown. This was the first permanent English settlement in North America; and the ruins I have described, are the remains of the ancient town, which these people built.

9. The colonists soon began to experience difficulties, which they had not foreseen. The provisions they brought with them were at length exhausted, and having planted nothing, they were in great want of food. Beside this, the climate being hot and damp, many of them were taken sick, and in the course of four months, fifty of them died.

10. They were now in great distress, and hardly knew what to do. In this emergency, they consulted one of their number, named John Smith. He was certainly one of the most extraordinary men that ever lived. At the age of fifteen, he left England, and travelled on foot through Spain, France and Germany.

11. Here he entered the army of the Emperor of Austria, and at length obtained the command of a troop o'

5. The Spaniards? A company in England?
6. What of the 105 persons who set out for America? Describe the picture. 7. The Indians?
8. What took place on the 13th May.

1607? James river? Jamestown? What was the first permanent English settlement in North America? 9. What of the colonists? 10. John Smith? Describe his adventures. 11.

horse. One day he challenged a Turk to fight with him; this was accepted, and, mounted on fine horses, the two combatants met in the field. After a desperate struggle, Smith killed the Turk. Not satisfied with this, he challenged another, and finally a third, and killed these, as he had done the first.

12. After this, he was in a battle with the Turks, and being wounded, was taken by the latter and sent prisoner to Constantinople. Here he was made a slave, and was treated cruelly by his master; but his mistress took compassion on him, and sent him to her brother, who lived at a great distance, requesting that he might be treated kindly. But her directions were not followed, and Smith received the same harsh treatment as before.

13. Irritated by this, he slew his new master. He then travelled in various countries, meeting with strange adventures wherever he went. He finally returned to England, and joined the expedition to Virginia. While they were at sea, the emigrants became jealous of him, and put him in confinement. In this condition he remained, until the distress of the colony rendered his assistance necessary.

14. They then granted him a trial; and being acquitted, he immediately adopted measures for remedying the existing evils. He set about building a fort, to protect the people from the Indians, and made long journeys into the wilderness to procure corn, and other food, of the natives.

15. On one occasion, he obtained an idol, made of skins, and stuffed with moss. This the savages revered very much, and in order to get it back,

they gave him as much corn as he asked for.

16. Nothing could exceed the boldness and enterprise of this singular man; yet it must be confessed, that his conduct was not always regulated by justice or truth. In his intercourse with the savages, he resorted to stratagem or violence, if he could not succeed in his plans by other means. It was partly on this account, that the Indians began to hate the white people; and Smith himself nearly fell a victim to the feelings of revenge he had excited.

17. He went one day to explore the little river Chickahominy. Having ascended as far as he could in a boat, he left it in charge of his men, and proceeded along the bank of the river, with two white men and two Indian guides. But not long after he was gone, the savages who were lurking in the woods, surrounded the men in the boat, and took them prisoners.

18. They then pursued Smith, and soon coming up with him, killed his white companions with their arrows, and wounded himself. But with an undaunted spirit, he fired upon his enemies, and tying one of the Indian guides to his side, he continued to retreat toward the boat. Awed by his bravery, the savages kept aloof; but at length he came to a place where he sank in the mire.

19. Being unable to extricate himself, his enemies now seized him, and took him in triumph to Powhatan, their king. A council was now held, to determine what should be done with the prisoner, and it was decided that he should die. He was accordingly brought forth, and being laid on the ground, his head was placed upon a stone.

What did the emigrants do with Smith? 14. What did Smith do? 16. Why did the Indians hate the white people? 17. Tell the adventures

of Smith, as he went to explore the river Chickahominy.

20. Powhatan claimed the honor of killing him. He took a large club, and raising it high in the air, was about to give the fatal blow, when his daughter, moved by pity, rushed to the prisoner, and sheltered his body by her own. The astonished chief brought his club slowly to the ground, and a murmur of surprise burst from the lips of the savages, who stood around.



Pocahontas saving Smith.

21. The chief now raised his daughter, and seeming to be touched by that pity which had affected her so much, gave Smith his liberty, and sent him back to Jamestown.

CHAP. XXXVII.

VIRGINIA.—CONTINUED.

1. On his arrival at Jamestown, Smith found the number of settlers reduced to thirtyeight. They were so disheartened, that most of them had determined to abandon the settlement, and go back to England. Smith remonstrated, but they would not stop. They entered a small vessel, and prepared to sail down the river. He determined that they should not go, so he pointed the guns of the fort at the vessel, and threatened to sink her, if

1. What of Smith and the settlers on his re-

they did not return. Alarmed at this, they gave up their project, and came ashore.

2. The colony was now almost in a starving condition; but Smith, by this time, had acquired such a reputation for courage among the Indians, that they did not dare to refuse supplies. Pocahontas, too, the beautiful Indian girl who had saved his life, continued to be his friend, and sent him such articles as were most needed. Thus the colony was able to subsist till Captain Newport, who brought out the first settlers, returned to the colony, bringing with him a quantity of provisions, and one hundred and twenty persons.

3. Now that the danger was over, the colonists would no longer submit to the government of Smith. Disorder and confusion among the people soon followed. About the same time, the passion for gold, which had induced many of the settlers to come to the country, was again excited. Some particles of yellow shining earth were found in the bank of a little stream north of Jamestown. Captivated with the idea of getting suddenly rich, the colonists left their proper employments, and went to dig what they supposed to be gold.

4. Smith endeavored to dissuade them, but they would not listen to him. Nothing was thought of, or talked of, but gold. So they all went to filling the ship with the earth, which they supposed to contain particles of that precious metal. At length she was loaded, and sailed for England. When she arrived there, the cargo was examined, and found to be nothing but common mud filled with little pieces of shining stone.

5. There is a lesson to be drawn

turn? 2. State of the colony? Pocahontas?
3. What of Smith and the colonists? Gold?

from this point of history. 'All is not gold that glitters,' says the proverb, and so the Virginians found it. I hope my readers, if they are ever tempted by any shining prospect to depart from the path of duty, will recollect that what seems to be gold, often proves to be only vulgar dust.

6. Smith, finding that he could not be useful, left the colonists digging for gold, and went himself to explore the coasts of the Chesapeake Bay. Having been absent some time, he returned, and after a while, went again to traverse the wilderness. He often met with Indians, and traded with some, fought with some, and again went back to the settlement, leaving with the natives an awful impression of his valor.

7. He was now chosen President, and the people submitting to his authority, order was soon restored. Habits of industry were resumed, and peace and plenty soon smiled upon the colony.

8. In 1609, the London company sent out nine ships, with nine hundred emigrants to the colony. On board of one of these vessels there were some officers appointed to rule over them. This, unhappily, was driven by a storm upon the Bermudas, and detained for a long time. The other vessels arrived safely; but the persons who came in them were of a vicious character, and refused to permit Smith to govern them. He determined, however, that he would be obeyed, and accordingly he seized upon several of them, and put them in prison. This alarmed the rest, and order was again restored.

9. It was about this time, that the Indians, fearing that the white people would become too powerful, determined to make a sudden attack upon them, and kill them all. Pocahontas heard of this scheme, and resolved, if possible, to save the English. Accordingly, one dark and stormy night, she left her father's wigwam, and went alone through the forests to Jamestown. Here she found Smith, and apprised him of the threatened danger. She then returned, and Smith took immediate measures to put the colony in a state of defence.

10. The Indians, finding the people watchful and prepared, gave up their project. Thus again did Pocahontas save the life of Smith, as well as the lives of all the white people in the colony.

11. About this time, Smith received a dangerous wound, which obliged him to go to England, to consult a surgeon. The Indians, finding the only man they feared was gone, attacked the colony, and, cutting off their supplies, reduced them to the greatest extremity.

12. Such in a short time was their miserable condition, that they devoured the skins of their horses, the bodies of the Indians they had killed, and the flesh of their dead companions. In six months, their number was reduced from more than five hundred to sixty.

13. At this point of time, the persons who had been wrecked at Bermuda, arrived; but they with the other settlers all agreed that it was best to quit the settlement, and return to England: Accordingly they sailed down the river for that purpose. Fortunate-

grants? What did they do? What did Smith do? 9. What plan was formed by the Indians about this time? What did Pocahontas do? 11. What of Smith? The Indians? 12. Condition of the colony? How was the number of the colonists reduced? 13. What of the persons who

5. What lesson is to be drawn from the conduct of the Virginians? 6. What did Smith do? 7. To what office was Smith chosen on his second return? What followed? 8. What happened in 1609? What of one vessel? Who were on board this vessel? Character of the new emi-

ly, they were met by Lord Delaware, who had come in a vessel from England, loaded with provisions. This revived their courage, and they went back to Jamestown.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

VIRGINIA.—CONTINUED.

1. The colony now began to enjoy more favorable prospects. Lord Delaware, who was governor, restored order and contentment by his mild and gentle conduct, and the Indians were once more taught to respect and fear the English. In 1611, new settlers arrived, and other towns were founded; and under a succession of wise governors, Virginia became a flourishing and extensive colony.

2. In 1612, Captain Argal went on a trading voyage up the Potomac, and heard that Pocahontas was in the neighborhood. He invited her to come on board his vessel, and she came. He then detained her, and carried her to Jamestown. He knew that Powhatan loved his daughter, and thought, while she was in the possession of the English, that he would be afraid to do them mischief.

3. But the noble-hearted chief, indignant at the treachery that had been practised, refused to listen to any terms of peace, till his daughter was restored.

4. While Pocahontas was at Jamestown, a respectable young Englishman, named Rolfe, became very fond of her.

had been wrecked at Bermuda? What did the colonists do? What of Lord Delaware? What did the emigrants do?

1. Condition of the colony under Lord Delaware? What happened in 1611? What of Virginia after this? 2. Captain Argal and Pocahontas? 3. Powhatan? 4. Mr Rolfe and Pocahontas? What followed the marriage of

She was indeed a very interesting woman; simple, innocent and beautiful. Pocahontas soon became attached to Rolfe, and with the consent of Powhatan, they were married. This was followed by peace between the colony and all the tribes subject to Powhatan. Soon after, Rolfe visited England with his bride. She was received by the king and queen, with the respect due to her virtues as a woman, and her rank as a princess. When she was about to return to America, she died, leaving one child, from whom some of the most respectable families in Virginia have descended.

5. New settlers now frequently arrived, and the colony rapidly increased. In 1619, a Dutch vessel came to Jamestown, bringing twenty Africans, who were purchased by the people. These were the first slaves brought into our country, and thus the foundation was unhappily laid for that system of slavery, which now pervades the Southern States.

6. In 1622, in the midst of apparent peace and prosperity, the colony was on the point of annihilation. Powhatan, the friend of the English, was dead. His successor, Opecanough, was a chief of great talent, but he secretly hated the English, and formed a scheme for their destruction. By his art and eloquence, he persuaded all the neighboring tribes to unite in an effort to kill every white man, woman, and child throughout the colony.

7. To conceal their purpose, the Indians now professed the greatest friendship for the English, and the eve-

Mr Rolfe and Pocahontas? What did they do after their marriage? How was Pocahontas received by the king and queen? What else of Pocahontas? 5. What took place in 1619? 6. What took place in 1622? What of Ope-

ning before the attack, brought them presents of game. The next day, precisely at 12 o'clock, the slaughter began, and three hundred and fortyseven men, women and children were killed in a few hours. More would have been destroyed, but that the plot was revealed by a friendly Indian, in time to put several of the towns on their guard.

8. This dreadful scene roused the English to vengeance. They pursued their enemies into the woods, burnt their wigwams, hunted them from forest to forest, killed hundreds of them, and drove the rest back into remote retreats. But although victorious, their numbers were very much reduced; out of eighty settlements, only eight remained, and in 1624, of the 9000 that had come to the colony, 1800 only were living.

9. It is impossible in this little book to tell you everything in the history of Virginia that is interesting. Under a succession of governors, some good, and some bad, the colony was at one time in prosperity, at another in adversity. When Cromwell usurped the government of England in 1660, the Virginians remained true to the king, but were afterwards obliged to submit to Cromwell's authority. At the restoration of Charles the Second, in 1666, they were among the first to greet his return.

10. In 1676, the colony experienced all the miseries of civil war. Nathaniel Bacon, a lawyer, put himself at the head of a rebellion, during which James-

canaanough? 7. What did the Indians do? How many white people were killed? 8. What did the English do? How had the numbers of the colonists been reduced? 9. What of the colony after these events? Cromwell and the Virginians? What did the Virginians do on the restoration of Charles the Second? 10. What happened in 1676? 11. What of Virginia in 1638?

town was burnt, and the adjacent districts laid waste. At length he died, and Gov. Berkley resumed his authority.

11. Notwithstanding these troubles, Virginia continued to flourish, and in 1688, contained 60,000 inhabitants. From that period, till about the year 1756, nothing occurred which I think would amuse you.

CHAP. XXXIX.

NORTH CAROLINA.

1. After leaving Virginia, we shall enter North Carolina. In travelling over the State, we shall observe that, like Virginia, it is divided into three parts; the level, sandy region towards the sea, and occupying nearly one half of the State; the hilly country in the middle; and the mountainous districts, in the western portion.

2. We shall remark that the labor of the field is performed by negro slaves. We shall see a great many plantations of tobacco, cotton, and rice. We shall meet with great forests of pine, in the eastern part of the State. Many of these trees are cut down by the people, made into boards, and sent to foreign markets. Great quantities of pitch and tar are also extracted from the pine trees, put into casks, and sent away.

3. If we proceed to the hilly country along the banks of the Yadkin

Questions on the Map of the Southern States.

—Boundaries of North Carolina? Describe the following rivers: Neuse, Cape Fear, Pamlico, Chowan, Roanoke. What mountains in North Carolina? How do they cross the State? Capital of N. C.? Where is Pamlico Sound? Describe the following towns: Raleigh, Fayetteville, Edenton, Newburn. Extent of N. C.? Population? What Capes in N. C.?

1. How is North Carolina divided? 2. What of slaves? Plantations? Forests? 3.

river, we shall meet with people in various places, hunting for gold. This is found in small grains mixed with sand, and sometimes in lumps of considerable size. Some persons have gone from New England to dig for gold in this State. I suppose they hope to get suddenly rich but they had better stay at home, for where one man becomes wealthy by digging for gold, a thousand get rich by staying at home, and quietly cultivating their farms.



People seeking for Gold in North Carolina.

4. If you look on the map, you will see in North Carolina, three capes shooting out into the Atlantic Ocean. These are dangerous places for ships. Often when they are sailing by, they are driven by the wind upon these capes, and dashed to pieces by the rolling waves.

5. While in this State, we should visit Raleigh. We shall find a handsome State House there, where the Legislature meets to enact laws. In this building is a beautiful statue of white marble, representing Washington, sitting down with a paper in his hand. It was executed in Italy by a famous man called Canova, and cost several thousands of dollars.

Gold? Describe the picture. 4. Capes in N. C.? 5. What of Raleigh? 6. Fayetteville? Wilmington? Newburn? Cotton, tobacco and

6. We shall not find any very large town in North Carolina; but Fayetteville, Newburn, and Wilmington, are considerable places. A great part of the tobacco, rice, and cotton, raised in this State, are sent to Charleston in South Carolina, and are thence distributed to all parts of the world. A great deal of the cotton is taken in large bags to New England, where it is worked up into cloth.

7. The tobacco is taken to various countries. Some of it is made into snuff, some into cigars, and some of it is chewed. If you should ever go to Europe, you will see a great many of the people constantly snuffing and puffing; and you may be pretty sure that they are indebted to North or South Carolina for the pleasure they take in these things.

8. North Carolina was first settled about the year 1650. The settlers of Virginia were not Puritans, but Churchmen, or Episcopalians. They were, however, almost as intolerant as the New England fathers, and persecuted those who did not believe with them in matters of religion.

9. Several persons distressed by these persecutions, left the colony, and proceeding to the north side of Albemarle Sound, settled along the shore, about the time abovementioned. Here, in the wilderness, they found peace and plenty. The soil was fertile, and the climate soft and gentle. Free from the biting winters of the north, undisturbed by the persecutions of their fellow men, they lived for a time, without government, yet without anarchy.

10. Attracted by these favorable

rice? 7. What is done with the tobacco? 8. When was North Carolina first settled? What of the settlers of Virginia? 9. When and by whom was North Carolina first settled? Situation

circumstances, other settlers came to them, until their number was considerable. In 1663, the territory of North and South Carolina, was granted by the King of England, to Lord Clarendon, and others.

11. To induce people to settle here, they gave public notice, that the inhabitants should enjoy perfect religious freedom, and have an assembly of their own choosing, to make laws for them. Accordingly, a good many persons came, and Mr Drummond was made governor of the colony.

12. In 1670, William Sayle made a settlement at a place then called Port Royal. The next year he removed to a neck of land between two rivers, called Cooper and Ashley. The settlement he called Charleston, in honor of the King of England, Charles the Second, then on the throne. This place grew very rapidly, and being at a great distance from Albemarle Sound, it had a distinct government to superintend its affairs. Hence arose the two names of North and South Carolina.

13. In 1707, some French people, forced from their homes by persecution, settled on the river Trent, near Pamlico Sound. In 1710, some Germans, driven by the same cause from their native land, took refuge near the same spot. Here for a time these settlers lived happily; but, by and by, a sudden and awful calamity fell upon them.

14. Not far from the white people, two powerful tribes of Indians, named Tuscaroras, and Corees, inhabited the

forests. Irritated by some injuries they had received, and fearing that the white people would soon spread themselves over the whole land, they secretly plotted the entire destruction of the French and German settlers.

15. The Indians were always very artful in war. In the present instance, they privately sent their families to a distant fort, and then twelve hundred warriors, armed with bows and spears, prepared for the attack.

16. They waited until it was night; then dividing into several parties, they secretly approached the different settlements. The inhabitants, who had gone to rest in peace, and without fear, were suddenly waked by the dreadful war-whoop.

17. Men, women and children were killed. The Indians, furious as tigers, ran from house to house, slaying all they met. Shrieks, prayers, and cries for mercy availed not. The innocent, the helpless, and the unresisting, all perished alike.

18. A few only of the inhabitants escaped. These, with the cries of their murdered countrymen in their ears, fled swiftly through the woods, to the settlement in South Carolina, for assistance. About a thousand men were immediately despatched, under Colonel Barnwell, against the Indians.

19. They had a long and tedious march, but at length they met the enemy. The latter fought bravely, but were defeated, and fled to the fortified town, where they had sent their women

of the settlers? 10. What took place in 1663? 11. What inducements did the proprietors hold out to settlers? What of Mr Drummond? 12. What took place in 1670? What of Charleston? Why did the colony of Charleston have a separate government? What occasioned the two names of N. C. and S. C.? 13. What took place in 1707? What in 1710? 14. What tribes of In-

dians inhabited the forests near these settlers? What plan was formed by these tribes? 15. What of the Indians? Their families? How many warriors went to the attack? 16. What did these warriors do? Describe the massacre. 18. How were the people of South Carolina informed of these things? What did they do? 19. What did the soldiers of S. C. do? What

and children. Here the white men pursued them, and were on the point of storming the place, when the Indians begged for peace. This was granted by Colonel Barnwell, and the white men returned to their homes.

20. But this peace did not last long; the Indians soon made war again, and Colonel Moore, with forty white men, and eight hundred friendly Indians, was sent against the enemy. The latter again fled to one of their fortified towns, but after a siege of several days, this was taken with eight hundred prisoners.

21. The Corees and Tuscaroras were now quite disheartened; they gave up their hopes of driving the white people from the country, and the former continued to be peaceable ever after. The latter, in 1713, bade adieu to the forests, and hills, and rivers, which they had once called their own, and, moving to the north, joined the Five Nations.

22. From this time, these celebrated tribes were called the Six Nations. A remnant of the Tuscarora tribe may be still seen at Vernon, in the State of New York.

23. In 1729, the two Carolinas, which till this time had been one colony, were separated, and ever since have remained distinct. The interior of North Carolina was soon explored, and finding it very fertile, many settlers established themselves there. The colony increased rapidly, and, under a succession of good governors, it flourished, till the approach of the Revolutionary War, in 1775.

did the Indians do? Did Colonel Barnwell grant the Indians peace? 20. Did this peace last long? What of Col. Moore? 21. What of the Corees and Tuscaroras? What did the Tuscaroras do in 1713? 23. What took place in 1729? What of N. C. from this time?

CHAP. XL.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. Perhaps my reader is tired of travelling. I therefore propose that we go to South Carolina by water. We will enter a ship at New York, and in a few hours we shall be upon the broad sea. The hills will sink behind the blue waves, and we shall see nothing but the sky above, and the ocean around us.

2. It is a delightful thing to sail upon the water with a fresh breeze;—but by and by the clouds grow dark, the wind howls through the rigging of the ship, and the waves are thrown into the most violent agitation. The vessel now leans down on one side towards the water, the timbers creak, the ropes rattle, the captain shouts aloud to the men, the waves strike the ship, and she staggers like a drunken man.

3. At such a time one who has never been at sea before is likely to be frightened; but the skilful captain and the fearless sailors watch every sail and rope and spar, every wave, and every breath of the gale, and the gallant ship, like a bird on the water, rides safely amidst the storm.

4. At length the clouds break away, the sun shines down upon the sea, and the troubled waters sink to repose; a deep calm settles upon the ocean, and its bosom is as smooth as a mirror. By and by a breeze springs up, the sails are filled, and the ship, speeding on her way, soon reaches the port to which she is bound. In six days after

Questions on the Map of the Southern States
—Boundaries? Describe the following rivers: Santee, Edisto, Great Pedee, Little Pedee. What Mountains in S. C.? Capital? Describe the following towns: Charleston, Greenville, Abbeville. Extent? Population?

1. Describe a voyage from New York to

leaving New York, we shall probably reach Charleston.

5. This we shall find to be a large and handsome city, with more negroes than white people in it. It is situated, as I have mentioned before, on a tongue of land between two little rivers, one called Ashley, and the other Cooper. These unite below the city, and form a large harbor, covered with vessels of various kinds.

6. If we stay a few weeks at Charleston, we shall find that it is a very gay city. In winter a great many people from the Northern States are here, and in summer, multitudes from the West Indies, and from the interior of the State, make it the place of their abode.

7. If we travel over South Carolina, we shall find the eastern part sandy, and the western part mountainous. Many of the planters are very rich, and great quantities of tobacco, rice, and cotton, are produced from the land. The slaves, who are more numerous than the white people, perform all the labor.

8. There are no large towns in this State except Charleston. Columbia is a handsome place, and there the legislature meets. Charleston is the principal seat of trade. The cotton, rice, and tobacco, are sent there and sold, and there the people get cloths, knives, axes, and other articles of merchandise.

9. I have told you something about the early history of this State. The first settlement, you will remember, was made near Charleston, in 1670. Many circumstances contributed to

Charleston. What of Charleston? Its situation? What if we stay at Charleston a few weeks? 7. Face of the country in S. C.? The planters? Productions? Slaves? 8. Columbia? Charleston? 9. First settlement in S. C.? 10. Who came to settle in S. C.? 11. What of N. C.? and S. C. until 1729?

make the settlement in South Carolina flourish.

10. Puritans came from England, because they were disgusted with the wickedness which prevailed there during the reign of Charles the Second. Many persons, who had lost their fortunes, settled there, in the hope of once more becoming rich. Large numbers of French Protestants, driven into exile by the cruelty of their government, sought an asylum there. From all these sources, the population of South Carolina increased with great rapidity.

11. I have told you, that until 1729, North and South Carolina were considered one colony. They had different governors, indeed, but until the date abovementioned, they were essentially one. They were then separated, and never afterwards united. From this period, the history of South Carolina offers nothing that would amuse my young readers, until the War of the Revolution; then its story, of which I shall tell you something by and by, becomes exceedingly interesting.

CHAP. XLI.

GEORGIA.

1. This is a very large State, but not so thickly settled as South Carolina. The southern parts are barren and sandy, the northern parts mountainous.

2. Savannah, the chief town, is situated on the Savannah river, about fourteen miles from the sea. It is regularly laid out, and carries on a very

Questions on the Map of the Southern States.
—Boundaries? Describe the following rivers: Ogeechee, Oconee, Oakmulgee, Satilla, Savannah. What mountains extend into the northwestern part of the State? Describe the following towns: Augusta, Savannah, Brunswick, Clarksville. Extent? Population?

extensive trade. When we are there, we shall observe several steam-boats going up and down the river; some of them from Augusta, loaded with bags of cotton, and others carrying up passengers, and various articles of merchandise wanted by the people.

3. If we get into the steam-boat, and go to Augusta, we shall find it a very flourishing place. It receives great quantities of cotton and tobacco from the neighboring districts, which are sent down the river to Savannah.

4. We shall find Milledgeville to be a very pleasant place; and if we travel into the western part of the State, we shall meet with two famous tribes of Indians, called Creeks and Cherokees. These Indians, have tolerable houses, beside horses and cattle, and they live chiefly by cultivating the land.

5. While in Georgia we shall observe some delicious fruits, that do not flourish in the Northern States. Oranges, lemons, limes, and figs, grow here in plenty. These last, when taken fresh from the tree, are far more delicious than when dried as we get them at the north. The people often eat them for breakfast, and they make an excellent meal.

6. In the southern part of Georgia and lying partly in Florida, is a famous swamp, called Okefonoko. It is three hundred miles around it, and it is full of reptiles. If you should happen to go along the edge of this swamp in summer, you would see some strange sights, and hear some strange sounds.

7. There are crocodiles large enough to swallow a man, lizards creeping along the trunks of the trees, and huge ser-

pents coiled in the thickets. If you stay till evening, you will have a serenade from ten thousand frogs; and when it gets to be dark, a bird like a whippoorwill, will repeat the sound of 'chuck will's widow' so fast as to astonish you.



View in Okefonoko Swamp.

8. If you visit this place in the morning, you will notice cranes, herons, spoonbills, and bitterns, all of them birds of the long-legged family, and some as tall as a man. These you will see standing motionless for hours, along the edge of the water, looking very sad, as if they had no friends upon earth; but if a fish, or a frog, or a snake, or a young crocodile, comes in their way, it is snapped up in an instant.

9. As my reader knows something about Georgia, as it is now, I will proceed to say something of its history. In 1732, one hundred and thirteen persons, under James Oglethorpe, came from England, and made the first settlement in this colony. They established themselves at Yamacraw Bluff, and there laid the foundation of the present city of Savannah.

10. The object of those persons in England who planned the settlement of

1. What of Georgia? Face of the country?
2. Savannah? Its trade? Steam-boats?
3. Augusta?
4. Milledgeville? Indians?
5. Fruits in Georgia?
6. What of Okefonoko Swamp?

Describe the picture. 9. What took place in 1732? Where was the first settlement in Georgia made?

Georgia, was to provide a place, where the poor people of Great Britain might go and live comfortably. They also desired to furnish an asylum, where the persecuted and oppressed of all nations might go and be at peace.

11. Such were the noble views which led to the settlement of this colony. The proprietors wishing to secure the happiness of the people, forbade slavery and the use of rum. Unfortunately, these good rules were soon disregarded.

12. In 1733, five hundred poor people emigrated from England to Georgia, and in 1735, four hundred settlers came from Germany, Switzerland, and Scotland. Thus the number of inhabitants increased rapidly; but still the colony did not flourish. The greater part of the people remained poor, although half a million of dollars had been spent in sending them across the Atlantic, and in providing them with the necessaries and comforts of life.

13. In the year 1740, there was war between England and Spain. Now the latter government possessed Florida, and had several settlements there. Accordingly, Mr Oglethorpe, governor of Georgia, determined to make war upon these Spanish settlements.

14. So he took with him two thousand men, a part of them from Virginia and South Carolina, and proceeded against St Augustine. This place he besieged, but the Spaniards defended themselves bravely, and he was obliged to march back again with his two thousand men.

15. Two years after this, the Spaniards came with thirty vessels, and three thousand soldiers, to punish the English settlers for their attack on St Augustine. Their intention was to take possession of Georgia first, and the two Carolinas afterwards.

16. Gen. Oglethorpe had but seven hundred men and a small body of Indians under his command. Accordingly he sent to South Carolina for assistance, but the people would not send him any. So he and his little band were left to defend themselves, as well as they could, against four times their number.

17. Oglethorpe knew his danger, and determined to scare the Spaniards away, if possible. He therefore contrived to make them believe that he had more men than he actually had, and that a great body of English soldiers were coming to help him.

18. One day, the Spaniards saw three vessels of war, off the coast; supposing that these had brought the reinforcements, they became very much alarmed, ran aboard their ships as fast as possible, and sailed away. Thus Oglethorpe got rid of his troublesome visitors.

19. In 1754, the proprietors gave up the colony to the king, and after that time it prospered very much. The people began to cultivate rice and indigo, which they found very profitable. Sometimes the Florida Indians were troublesome, but no war of much interest occurred.

10. What motives led to the settlement of G. ?
11. What was forbidden in Georgia? Were these restrictions observed? 12. What took place in 1733? What in 1735? Did the colony flourish? What of the greater part of the people? How much had been spent? 13. What took place in 1740? What of Florida? Several towns and

settlements there? 14. What did Gen. Oglethorpe do? 15. What did the Spaniards do two years after? 16. What of Gen. Oglethorpe? 17. How did Oglethorpe frighten the Spaniards? 18. What did they do? 19. What took place in 1754? What did the people cultivate? The Indians?

CHAP. XLII.

THE FOUR SOUTHERN ATLANTIC STATES.

1. I have now given you some account of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. These four States are in many respects alike. The eastern portions are generally low, sandy, and barren. The western portions are hilly and mountainous.

2. Their chief productions are cotton, tobacco, and rice. The climate is hot, and in summer it is unhealthy, in the low country. The land is chiefly divided into large plantations. The owners of these are called planters. They possess a multitude of black slaves, who perform all the labors of the field, and in the house



Negro Slaves at Work in the Field.

Questions on the Map of the Southern States.

—Which four of the Southern States lie on the Atlantic Ocean? What mountains cross these States? In which direction do the rivers generally run in these four States? Which is the largest town? In which direction are the following places from Washington? Richmond, Raleigh, Columbia, Charleston, Milledgeville, Savannah. How many people in these four Southern States?

1. What of the four Southern Atlantic States? Face of the country? 2. Chief productions? Climate? How is the land divided? Planters?

3. The slaves are generally well treated; that is, they have enough to eat, drink, and wear, and are not required to labor beyond their strength. But yet these poor negroes have no education, they have no property, no liberty, no right to consult their own wishes, or, like the rest of mankind, pursue happiness in their own way. They have little knowledge of religion, and sink into their graves almost as ignorant of the destiny that awaits them, as the brutes that perish.

4. Beside all this, when a planter dies, his slaves are often sold; some to one person and some to another. Perchance the wife is taken by this man, the husband by that, and their children by a third. Thus the family is separated, and very often they never see each other again.

5. A gentleman who was in Georgia, two or three years ago, told me he once witnessed a public sale of negroes there. They were put up at auction, and many gentlemen came to bid for them. The slaves consisted of men, women, and children. The bidders examined them, turned them round, and made them walk back and forth, as if they had been cattle or horses.

6. At length, the sale was finished. One of the negro women had three children; a daughter about fourteen years old, and two boys about eight or ten years old. It happened that the children were bought by one person, and the mother by another. They were now to be separated, and never expected to see each other more. The gentleman who told me the story said the little boys did not mind the parting much, but the agony of the mother, and

Slaves? Describe the picture. 3. How are the slaves treated? Condition of the slaves? 4. What becomes of the slaves when a planter dies? 5. What story of

the distress of the daughter, were past description.

7. Such are some of the evils of slavery. It is a bad system altogether, and all good people believe that it is wrong. I hope the time will soon come, when there will be no slaves in our country. A benevolent society has been formed for the purpose of setting these negroes free, and for sending them to Africa. They have already established a colony there, consisting entirely of blacks, called Liberia. Several hundred have already gone there; and the colony is likely to prosper. I sincerely hope that the slaves in the United States may be gradually liberated, and that they may enjoy happiness and freedom in the native land of the negro race.

8. I have already told you that the first slaves brought to this country, arrived at Virginia in 1619. For about fifty years before the settlement of this colony, the merchants of England had been engaged in the slave trade. They used to send large ships to the western coast of Africa; these were then loaded with negroes, which were taken to the West Indies, to South America, and various other places, and sold. Sometimes the slaves were bought in Africa, of those who had taken them in war, and sometimes the sailors went ashore, stole men, women, and children, and forced them on board their ships.

9. These poor creatures were crowded into the vessels, and used in the most barbarous manner. Many of them expired for want of fresh air; some be-

a sale of negroes? 7. What of Liberia? 8. What of the first slaves brought to America? What of the slave trade? How are the slaves procured? 9. How were the negroes treated on board the ships? Describe their sufferings. 10. Were there once slaves in the Middle and Northern States? 11. Of what did the people become convinced? What was done?

came deranged and jumped into the sea. Sometimes mothers died, and their little children perished for want of care; and sometimes the men killed themselves rather than endure the torments they suffered.

10. Such were some of the horrors attending the slave trade. Yet it continued to be carried on, and very soon there were a great many slaves in all the colonies. There were more in the Southern than in the Northern States; but still in Pennsylvania, New York, and New England, there were several thousands.

11. But at length, the people became convinced that slavery was wrong, and, in all the States north of Maryland, it was abolished. The Southern States still permit it; but I hope they, too, will, ere long, prohibit it.

CHAP. XLIII.

ALABAMA, MISSISSIPPI, AND LOUISIANA.

1. To the west of Georgia, there are three large States called Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana. Alabama is well furnished with navigable rivers, and the soil is remarkable fertile. The inhabitants are chiefly engaged in raising cotton, and tobacco.

Questions on the Map of the Southern States.

—Boundaries of Alabama? Describe the following rivers: Alabama, Tallapoosa, Cahawba, Tombigbee. What is the capital?

Boundaries of Mississippi? Describe the following rivers: Pascagoula, Leaf, Pearl, Black, Yazoo. Capital? Describe Natchez, Mobile, Columbia.

Boundaries of Louisiana? Describe the following rivers: Sabine, Wachitta, Red, Tensas. Capital? How is New Orleans situated? Describe the following towns: Baton Rouge, Alexandria, Franklin.

1. What of Alabama? Soil? Inhabitants?

2. This territory was a mere hunting ground for the Indians long after the settlement of other parts of our country. After the revolutionary war, it was claimed by Georgia, and the United States purchased it for 1,250,000 dollars. By and by it began to be settled, and soon there were several thousand people there. In 1819, it became one of the United States.

3. I will now tell you about the State of Mississippi. The land here is generally level, with some ranges of hills. A large portion of the country is still covered with thick pine forests, in which there are a great many wild deer. Toward the southern part there are swamps and marshes filled with alligators. Natchez is the largest town in the State. It is situated on a high bluff, on the eastern bank of the Mississippi. The planters send a great deal of cotton to this place, which is taken down the river, to New Orleans.

4. As early as the year 1539, a Spaniard, named Ferdinand de Soto, came to this country with nine hundred persons. They spent three years in searching for gold, but at length de Soto died, and his companions went away. In 1683, a Frenchman named de Salle, came down the river and named the country Louisiana, in honor of his king Louis XIV.

5. From this the French claimed the territory, and, in 1716, made a settlement where Natchez now stands, called Fort Rosalie. Other settlements were made by French people in the territory; but in 1763, it was ceded to Great

Britain. At the close of the revolutionary war it belonged to the United States, and in 1817, it was admitted into the Union as a State.

6. Louisiana is the most level of the twentyfour States. There are very extensive marshes lying along the Gulf of Mexico, and there is much low land bordering on the Mississippi. In the spring of the year, when this mighty river is swollen by rains, it sometimes rises above its banks, and spreads a vast flood of waters over the country in Louisiana.

7. The people of this State are chiefly employed in raising cotton. There are also many plantations of sugar-cane. This plant resembles our Indian corn in appearance. The stalks contain a sweet juice, from which sugar and molasses are made. A large part of the sugar and molasses, which we use, is produced in Louisiana.

8. New Orleans, the capital, is nearly as large as Boston. It is situated 100 miles from the mouth of the Mississippi, and receives vast quantities of produce, which come down that great river. If you ever visit this place, you will see many things to surprise you. The people are a collection from all countries. A great many are French, some are Spanish, some Scotch, some Irish, and some Dutch. Beside these there are thousands of negroes.

9. At this place you will see many vessels which have come from various parts of Europe and America, to get cotton, tobacco, sugar, flour, pork, and furs; all of which come down the Mississippi in abundance.

2. What of the territory of Alabama? By whom was it claimed? By whom purchased? When did Alabama become a State? 3. What of Mississippi? Forests? Swamps? Natchez? 4. What of Ferdinand de Soto? What happened in 1683? 5. What in 1716? What in 1763?

To whom did Mississippi belong at the close of the revolutionary war? When did it become a State? 6. What of Louisiana? Marshes? What of the Mississippi? 7. Cotton? Sugar-cane? 8. New Orleans? People of New Or-

10. You will also see many steam-boats, going and coming, loaded with passengers and freight of all kinds. Some of these boats are almost as large as ships of war. They are constantly going up and down the Mississippi: some of them ascend that river for more than a thousand miles.

11. I have told you of a famous battle which took place near Baltimore in 1814. During the same war, a still more famous engagement occurred at New Orleans. On the 8th January, 1815, 12,000 British troops came against that city. Gen. Jackson was there with 3000 American soldiers.

12. He knew that the enemy were coming; so he prepared to receive them. He had a long breast-work made of bags of cotton, heaped one upon another. Then he placed twelve cannon along the line, and the Americans got behind the breast-work. All things were now ready, and the British troops, led by Gen. Packenham, began to advance.

13. It was truly a noble display, as they came on. The officers were richly dressed, in red coats, with shining epaulets. They had feathers of many colors in their hats, and they were armed with swords and pistols, which glittered in the morning light.

14. Then came the soldiers with their bright guns, and sharp bayonets. They marched in straight lines, and covered the ground almost as far as the eye could reach. There was a fine band of music, too, and the air rung with sounds of the drum and fife. Thus the British came on, marching over the

level ground toward the American breast-work.

15. For a long time the Americans were still, and let the British come close upon them. Then suddenly the men put their lighted matches to the cannon; the balls were hurled amid the British ranks, and the soldiers fell by hundreds. Then, too, the Americans pointed their guns over the breast-work, and sent their bullets in the faces of the enemy. A living sheet of fire continued to blaze along the American line, and the ground far and near was shaken with the thunder of the battle.

16. The British were brave men, and they were led by a brave general; but they could not withstand the deadly fire of the Americans. They were driven back, leaving the ground strewed with hundreds of the dead and dying. Twice indeed they rallied, and a few of them, as if seeking death, rushed close up to the breast-work. One daring officer, at the head of his men, ascended to the top of it, and shouted to his followers to come on. But ere the words had parted from his lips, he fell into the ditch below, pierced through and through by a dozen bullets.

17. In one hour after the battle began, it was all over. The British were totally defeated, and marched sullenly away. Gen. Packenham was killed, seven hundred of his brave soldiers lay dead on the field, one thousand four hundred were wounded, and five hundred were taken prisoners. Thus the British lost twenty-six hundred men, while the Americans had only seven killed, and six wounded.

18. Let us now go back to a much

leans? 9. Vessels? 10. Steam-boats? 11. When was the battle of New Orleans fought? Who commanded the Americans? How many British troops were there? How many Americans? 12. What did Gen. Jackson do? Who

commanded the British troops? 13. Describe the battle. 17. How long did the battle last? Who were defeated? What was the loss of the British? Loss of the Americans? 18. To what

earlier date, and see what happened in Louisiana. This name was originally applied to that vast tract of country lying between the Mississippi and the Pacific Ocean. It was considered as belonging to the French; and in 1699, the first settlement was made at Iberville. Owing to the unhealthiness of the climate, many of the settlers died, and the colony did not flourish. In 1712, out of 2500 who had settled there, only 400 were living.

19. In 1717, the present city of New Orleans was founded, and from this time the French settlements along the Mississippi, continued to increase. In the year 1803, Mr Jefferson, the President of the United States, bought the whole country west of the Mississippi of the French government, and gave them 15,000,000 of dollars for it. Since that time, it has belonged to the United States.

20. In the year 1812, that portion now called Louisiana, was set apart and became one of the United States. The inhabitants were chiefly French, but a great many people have emigrated, within the last twenty years, from other parts of the United States, and settled there.

21. Thus I have told you about the three great States lying along the Gulf of Mexico. The climate here is very hot, and as in the other four Southern States, almost all the labor is performed by slaves. There are many French and Spanish among the inhabit-

ants, who still preserve the customs of their original countries. There are many thousands of the people who speak no other than the French language.

CHAP. XLIV.

THE WESTERN STATES.

1. To the north of the three States of which I have just been telling you, are the six Western States. They are in general very fertile, and are watered by some of the noblest rivers in the world. In general they are hilly, or moderately uneven.

2. As this is a very interesting portion of our country, we must not fail to

Questions on the Map of the Western States.

—Boundaries of Ohio? Describe the following rivers: Sandusky, Ohio, Cayahoga, Maumee, Muskingum. Capital? Describe the following towns: Columbus, Cincinnati, Lancaster, Chillicothe, Marietta, Zanesville, Steubenville.

Boundaries of Indiana? Describe the following rivers: White, Wabash, Tippecanoe. Capital? Describe the following towns: Connersville, Vincennes, Madison, Croydon.

Boundaries of Illinois? Describe the following rivers: Illinois, Sangamon, Rock, Kaskaskia. Capital? Describe the following towns: Peoria, Albion, Kaskaskia, America.

Boundaries of Missouri? Describe the following rivers: Gasconade, Osage, Missouri, Big Black, Prairie, La Mine. Capital? Describe the following towns: St Genevieve, Louisiana, St Charles, Franklin. What Mountains in M.? In what direction do they run? In what part of the State do they lie?

Boundaries of Tennessee? Describe the following rivers: Duck, Tennessee, Forked Deer, Cumberland. Capital? Describe the following towns: Memphis, Fayetteville. What Mountains cross the southeastern part of Tennessee?

Boundaries of Kentucky? Describe the following rivers: Green, Kentucky, Glasgow. Capital? Describe the following towns: Lexington, Mount Vernon, Louisville, Maysville, Bairdstown.

1. What of the Western States? Fertility? Rivers? Face of the country? 3. What of

tract was the name of Louisiana first applied? To whom did it belong? What took place in 1699? What of this colony? What of the settlers in 1712? 19. When was New Orleans founded? What of the French settlements after this? What took place in 1803? 20. What in 1812? Inhabitants? 21. Climate of the three Southwestern States? Slaves? French and Spanish? French language?

pay it a visit. We will take the stage at Philadelphia, and proceed across the Alleghany mountains to Pittsburg. There we will enter a steam-boat, and go down the Ohio river to Cincinnati.

3. This is a large town containing half as many inhabitants as Boston; yet it is but about forty years since it was first laid out! If we travel over the State of Ohio, we shall find that it has been recently settled, and that large portions of it are yet covered with forests. But we shall everywhere meet with new villages springing up in the wilderness; we shall see a great many good farms; and we shall discover that the inhabitants enjoy an abundance of the comforts of life.

4. If we travel westward into Indiana and Illinois, we shall find the country still more thinly peopled. Here and there we shall meet with a little village built within a few years. As we cross the forests, we shall see a plenty of deer and flocks of wild turkeys. We may sometimes see a bear crossing our path, or a panther couched in the top of a tree.

5. If we travel in Missouri we shall find that State but thinly inhabited. We ought to visit the lead mines in this State; they lie about forty miles west of the Mississippi, and are the most prolific in the world. Near twenty million pounds of lead, are obtained from these mines every year.

6. As we are crossing this State we shall occasionally meet with prairies. These are natural meadows covered with tall grass, and almost as level as the sea. Sometimes they are of vast extent, and you may travel for a whole day without crossing one of them.

When you are in the midst of one of these mighty prairies, you may look around and see nothing on either side, but the level land spread out like the ocean.

7. It is the practice of the Indians to burn these prairies over every year. The fire spreads rapidly among the tall grass, and often the deer, wild horses, and buffaloes, are overtaken and burnt to death.



Prairie on Fire.

8. We shall find St. Louis to be a considerable place, and rapidly increasing. Many of the inhabitants are French, and some of them are natives of New England.

9. If you are fond of enterprise, you can here join a hunting expedition, about to proceed two thousand miles, up the Missouri river, for the purpose of killing buffaloes, bears, beavers, and other wild animals. These hunting parties frequently set out from St. Louis, and are sometimes gone two or three years. They bring back many boat-loads of skins, taken from the animals they have killed.

10. Sometimes these hunters meet with unfriendly Indians, who attack

Cincinnati? What of the State of Ohio? Forests? Villages? Farms? Inhabitants? 4. What of Indiana and Illinois? Villages? Deer?

Other wild Animals? 5. Missouri? Lead Mines? 6. Prairies? 7. Indians? Describe the picture. 8. St. Louis? 9. Hunting ex-

them. Several hunting parties have been entirely destroyed in this way.

11. After leaving Missouri, we should travel in Tennessee and Kentucky. Here we shall find the country more thickly settled, and we shall meet with several large and handsome towns. Nashville and Lexington are both delightful places.

12. We must not leave Kentucky without visiting the great cave, situated in the southwestern part of the State. It is one of the most remarkable curiosities in this country. It extends under ground to the distance of ten miles, and presents a great many avenues and apartments. One of these is almost half as large as Boston Common, with an arch of rock over it, as high as the steeple of Park Street Church.

CHAP. XLV.

WESTERN STATES.—CONTINUED.

1. I will now tell you something of the history of the Western States. I will begin first with Tennessee. This State derives its name from its principal river. The Indians imagined this river to bend like a spoon; so they called it Tennessee, which, in their language, is the name of a spoon.

2. This country was included with the two Carolinas, in the grant made by Charles the Second, to the Earl of Clarendon, in 1664. When North and South Carolina were separated in 1729, Tennessee continued to be a part of the

pedition? 10. What do the hunters sometimes meet with? 11. What of Tennessee and Kentucky? Nashville and Lexington? 12. Where is the great Cave? Describe it.

1. From what does Tennessee derive its name? 2. In what was Tennessee included? What of Tennessee after 1789? When was it ceded to the United States? When did it become a State?

former, and so remained till the year 1789, when it was ceded to the United States. In 1796, it became a member of the Union.

3. The first settlement in Tennessee was made about the year 1754, by fifty families, who established themselves where Nashville now stands. These were attacked by the Indians, and were soon obliged to return to North Carolina. In 1765, some people came to the eastern part of the territory, and formed the first permanent white settlement in Tennessee. In 1780, Nashville was founded, and from this period the population rapidly increased.

4. Kentucky belonged to Virginia till the year 1786, when it became a separate district. It was received into the Union in 1792. Long after Virginia was settled, Kentucky remained in the possession of the Indians. Some white people went there occasionally to trade with the natives, and they brought back very favorable accounts of the soil and climate. In 1769, Colonel Daniel Boone and some others, went to see the country.

5. This party was attacked and plundered by the Indians, and all of them were killed except Boone. He remained in the wilderness for near two years, and then returned to his family, who lived on the Yadkin river in North Carolina.

6. He was an eccentric man, and preferred the wild woods to meadows and wheat fields. Accordingly, he determined to return to Kentucky, and in 1773, went there with fifty families be-

3. When was the first settlement made in Tennessee? What occurred in 1765? What in 1780? 4. What of Kentucky? When did it become a State? What of Kentucky? Indian traders? Colonel Boone? 6. Character of Boone?

side his own, and forty men. These penetrated into the forests, and made the first settlement in Kentucky.

7. Other settlers continued to arrive, and the population thus gradually increased. During the Revolutionary War, the inhabitants were much distressed by the Indians, who took part with the British, and committed every species of cruelty upon the defenceless settlers. They were severely punished, however, in 1778, by Gen. Clarke, who marched against them with a body of soldiers, and laid their country waste. From this time they became less hostile, and the white people lived in greater security.

8. After this, the settlements flourished; the fruitful soil, the mild climate, and beautiful rivers of this region, drew people to it from all parts of the country. Col. Boone himself, retaining his love for the wilderness, retired as civilization advanced. He spent much of his time alone in the woods, subsisting upon wild deer, which he killed with his sure rifle. He lived to a great age, and when a grey haired old man, was still attached to the mode of life which he had preferred in earlier days.



Col. Boone shooting a Deer.

9. I will now tell you of Ohio. As late as the year 1787, almost all this country was in the possession of the Indians. A few scattered inhabitants had established themselves within the territory. In 1788, Gen. Rufus Putnam, with a party from New England, planted a little colony at the mouth of the Muskingum, where Marietta now stands; thus forming the first regular settlement in Ohio.

10. From this time, the population increased, though it was considerably checked by an unhappy war with the Indians, which lasted till 1795. In August of that year, Gen. Wayne made a treaty of peace with the savages, and thus hostilities ceased.

11. Emigrants now began to flock to Ohio from various parts of the country; a great many went from New England, and liking the country, they invited their friends to come and join them. At length, so numerous were the emigrations, that every day, one might see, in the Eastern States, wagon-loads of men, women, and children, moving to this Western Country.

12. The summer of 1816 was very cold; and in New England the crops of corn were cut off, other kinds of grain were nearly destroyed, and there was not grass enough produced to support the cattle. The winter that followed, was severe, and many of them died from hunger. There was a good deal of suffering, too, among the people.

13. These circumstances gave a fresh

tlers? The people of K. during the Revolution? What took place in 1778? 8. What of K. after this? What of Col. Boone? Describe the picture. 9. What of Ohio till 1787? What took place in 1788? What was the first regular settlement in Ohio? 10. What of war with the Indians? Peace? 11. Emigrants? What might every day be seen some years ago in the Eastern States? 12. The summer of 1816? The fol-

What did he do in 1773? When was the first settlement made in K.? 7. What of other set-

impulse to the tide of emigration which was flowing to the west. Farmers, mechanics, day laborers, grandfathers and grandmothers, husbands and wives, sons and daughters, sold houses and lands, and bidding adieu to their native New England, took up their long and tedious way to Ohio. Thousands and thousands thus went away from a land of meadows, and meeting-houses, and pleasant villages, to bury themselves in the deep forests of a new country.

14. But they have been well rewarded. Ohio was admitted into the Union in 1802, and is now one of the most prosperous of the twentyfour States. Though it has been settled scarcely fifty years, it contains near a million of inhabitants. Its growth has been unexampled, and we can see nothing in the future which is likely to check its progress.

15. Indiana and Illinois originally belonged to the French, and a few scattered settlements were made there, by people of that nation, near a hundred years ago. But at the close of the war, in 1763, of which I am going to tell you soon, the territory was ceded to Great Britain. At the close of the rev-

lowing winter? 13. What effect had the cold seasons of 1816? 14. When did Ohio become a State? Its present condition? How long has O. been settled? Its population? Growth? 15. What of Indiana and Illinois? Settlements made there? When was the territory ceded to Great Britain? When did it come into the possession of the United States? When did Indiana become a State? When did Illinois become a State? 16. What of Missouri? Settlement of St Louis? When did M. become a State? What took place in Congress before its admission into the Union? Which of the Western States allow of slavery? Which of them do not? Repeat the names of all the twentyfour States that allow of slavery. Repeat the names of those that do not. How many are slave-holding States? How many are non-slave-holding States?

olutionary war, it was given up to the United States. Indiana was admitted into the Union in 1816, and Illinois two years after.

16. Missouri is a part of the great tract of country, purchased by Mr Jefferson of the French government, in 1803, as I have told you. A settlement was made at St Louis, by some French people, as early as 1764. The population was however small until within a few years. It was admitted into the Union in 1821, after a warm discussion in Congress, whether slavery should be allowed in the State or not. It was at length decided that it should be allowed, and Missouri, with Tennessee and Kentucky, are among the slave-holding States. The three other Western States, like New England, and four of the Middle States, do not permit slavery.

CHAP. XLVI.

THE SIX TERRITORIES.

1. I have now told you of the twentyfour States. But if you will look on

Questions on the Map of the United States.
—Boundaries of Florida? Capes? Capital? Where is St Augustine? Boundaries of Michigan? Where is Detroit? Boundaries of Northwest Territory? What tribes of Indians in the N. W. Territory? Boundaries of Missouri Territory? Describe the following rivers: Yellow Stone R., Platte, Kougas, Missouri. Where are the Falls of St Anthony? Where are the Great Falls of Missouri? What tribes of Indians in Missouri Territory? Where is Council Bluffs? Boundaries of Arkansas Territory? Describe the Arkansas R. Capital? Where is the town of Arkansas? Boundaries of Oregon Territory? Describe the Columbia R. Multnomah. Where is Astoria? Where is Vancouver's Island? Nootka Sound? What tribes of Indians in Oregon Territory? What great range of mountains separates Oregon from Missouri Territory?

the map of the United States, you will see embraced within its limits, vast tracts of country, called Territories. These occupy a greater extent of surface, than the twentyfour States themselves. They are for the most part unsettled, and therefore more than one half of the land belonging to the United States, is yet in a state of nature.

2. At the southeastern corner of the United States, is Florida, a broad strip of land shooting into the sea between the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. It was discovered at a very early period, by the Spaniards, and received its name from the abundance of wild flowers, that flourished upon its soil. In 1562, a little band of French Protestants fled from persecution, and settled near where the present town of St Augustine stands. Here it would seem they might have lived in peace; but the cruelty which had driven them from home, pursued them to their lonely retreat.

3. A Spanish officer, named Melendez, discovered the settlement, and finding that the people were not Catholics, but Protestants, he and his soldiers put them to death, in the most cruel manner. But this wicked act did not go unavenged. A few years afterwards a Frenchman, named De Gourgues, visited the country with some soldiers, attacked the Spaniards who were settled near, and killed many of them. Some of them he hanged upon the same trees, from which were still suspended the skeletons of his countrymen, who had been murdered by Melendez.

4. St Augustine was founded by the Spaniards about the year 1570, and is the oldest town in the United States. Other settlements were made in Florida by the Spaniards, but the population increased slowly. In 1819, the Spanish government relinquished their claims to the country, and since that time it has belonged to the United States.

5. Michigan Territory was originally inhabited by a numerous and powerful tribe of Indians, called Hurons. About the year 1748, some Catholic priests from Canada, went among these savages, and converted the greater part of them to the Catholic religion. About twenty years after, the Six Nations, who hated the Hurons, called together their warriors, and sent them against the latter tribe.

6. Animated by mutual dislike, the two parties fought desperately. For some time the wilderness rang with the war whoop, and many a brave red man was killed; but at length the Hurons were defeated, and the whole tribe dispersed.

7. I shall tell you by and by how the French surrendered their Canadian settlements to the English in 1763. Michigan Territory shared the same fate; but in 1783 it was ceded to the United States.

8. The Northwest Territory remains almost in its original state. There are no towns, and but a few small settlements in it. The country is inhabited chiefly by Indians, and it is ranged by parties of hunters and traders, who go in quest of furs.

1. What of the extent of the Territories? What portion of the United States is still unsettled? 2. What of Florida? Its discovery? Name? French Protestants? 3. Melendez? De Gourgues? 4. St Augustine? Other settlements?

What happened in 1819? 5. Original inhabitants of Michigan Territory? Catholic priests and the Hurons? Six Nations? 6. The Hurons? 7. What happened in 1763? When was Michigan Territory ceded to the English? When to the United States? 8. What of the N. W Terri-

9. Missouri Territory is an immense plain, bounded by the Mississippi on the east, and the Rocky Mountains on the west. It is an extended prairie, occasionally broken by hills, and generally destitute of trees, except along the banks of the rivers. It abounds in wild animals, which are hunted as well by parties of white men, as by the tribes of savages, who inhabit the country. There are no white settlements in the Territory, but there are some soldiers stationed at Council Bluffs, and other places, to protect the traders, and keep the Indians in good order.

10. The travellers who have been in this region, give wonderful accounts of the wild animals. The bison, or buffalo as it is improperly called, is



A Herd of Bisons, or Buffaloes.

a large beast resembling an ox. These creatures go in droves, and feed upon the grass of the prairies. Sometimes a drove of ten thousand may be seen, stretching over the land, as far as the eye can reach. The Indians shoot great numbers of these animals; they feed on their flesh, and sell the skins to the traders. These skins are called Buffalo Robes, and we use them in winter to keep our feet warm, when we are riding.

oy? Indians? Hunters? 9. Missouri Territory? In what does it abound? Who hunt

11. Beside bisons there are elks in



great abundance, with branching horns six feet high. There are cougars, generally called panthers, so strong as to



be able to kill a man, and carry his body up a tree. There are grisly bears, with terrible claws, and they are



them? Settlements? Soldiers? 10. Travellers? Bison? Describe the picture. Herds of Bisons? Indians? Buffalo Robes? 11. Elks? Describe the picture. Cougars? Describe the picture. Grisly Bears? Describe the picture

so tough, that they can hardly be killed with musket balls. There are beautiful little Antelopes, that seem to fly



rather than run, over the hills and valleys; and toward the Rocky Mountains there are sheep, with horns as big as a



man's arm. There are also swift footed goats on the Rocky Mountains, that leap like birds from cliff to cliff.



Antelopes? Describe the picture. Sheep? De-

12. There are a great many wild horses in the plains. The Indians catch these animals, and tame them. An Indian warrior, mounted on a fleet horse, riding with his spear in his hand, against his enemy, has a formidable appearance.



Indian Warrior on Horseback.

13. The Territory of Arkansas, like that of Missouri, abounds in wild animals, and a great part of it is occupied by tribes of savages. Some French settlements were made there long since, but in 1810, the whole number of white inhabitants did not much exceed a thousand. But the population from that time increased rapidly, and in 1820, there were 15,000.

14. I have now to tell you of Oregon Territory, which lies between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean. It is an immense region, being six times as extensive as all the New England States. Yet it is entirely destitute of white inhabitants, excepting the little town of Astoria, on Columbia River. Here are a few people occupied in collecting furs from the Indians.

15. About thirty years ago, Mr Jefferson sent a party of men, under Cap-

scribe the picture. 12. Wild horses? Indian Warrior? Describe the picture. 13. Arkansas Territory? French settlements? Inhabitants in 1810? In 1820? 14. Oregon Territory? Its extent? White inhabitants? Astoria? 15

Lewis, and Capt. Clark, to explore this country. They ascended the river Missouri to its source, crossed the Rocky Mountains, and went down the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. There they remained through the winter, and then returned.

16. They were absent two years, and met with many strange adventures. They found a great many grisly bears on the west side of the Rocky Mountains, and had several encounters with them. One day, a man named McNeal, belonging to the party, was riding by some bushes, when a huge bear jumped out, and pursued him.

17. His horse, being greatly frightened, sprang aside, and threw him on the ground. By the time he could get up, the bear was close to him, with his mouth open, and growling terribly. McNeal struck him over the head with the breech of his gun; though it broke the latter to pieces, it only stunned the bear for a moment. McNeal ran as fast as he could to a tree, and began to climb up; but the bear followed so close, as to scratch him behind when he was ascending; but he got out of the creature's way, and as the bear could not climb the tree, McNeal was safe.

18. The hungry beast waited a long time, expecting that the man would come down, and let him eat him up. But finding that he would not do so, the creature walked away, and the poor fellow came down, glad enough to escape from his new acquaintance.

19. One day, Capt. Lewis was walking along upon a prairie, when he was suddenly attacked by a grisly bear. As he had no gun, he leaped into the

river, which was close by, and was going to swim to one of the boats. But when he had got a little way into the water, he found that the creature was



Captain Lewis chased by a Bear.

close to him. So he turned round, and faced him with a spear, which he had in his hand. The bear did not like the looks of the spear, so he whirled about, and scampered away as fast as he could.

20. The travellers found everywhere on their route, tribes of Indians, scattered over the country. Those who lived along the banks of the Columbia River, were generally poor, and miserable. Most of them were great thieves, and troubled the party very much by pilfering.

21. As the travellers were returning, they saw immense herds of buffaloes, on the plains, east of the Rocky Mountains. One day, as they were coming down the Missouri in some boats, they found the river quite choked up, by a multitude of these animals, who were swimming across it.

22. Finally, the travellers returned, to the great joy of their friends. They had been gone so long, that everybody thought them dead. They published

What did Mr Jefferson do about thirty years ago? What did Lewis and Clark do? 16. Grisly Bears? Story of McNeal, and a bear? 19.

Story of Captain Lewis and the bear? 20. Tribes of Indians? 21. Herds of buffaloes? Buffaloes crossing the Missouri? 22. Return of the trav

a book, giving an account of their expeditions, which is full of interest, and affords a great deal of valuable information.

23. Thus I have told you of the six Territories. These, you will understand, are different from States. A State has a governor, and a legislature, who meet and make laws for the people. The governor and members of the legislature, are chosen by the people.

24. But the Territories have no legislatures, and the people have no concern in making the laws, by which they are governed. They are under the direction of Congress, and are ruled by governors appointed by the President and Senate of the United States.

25. Thus you perceive that the Territories are wholly dependent upon the general government, while the people of the States govern themselves, and are independent, with some limitations. When a territory has 40,000 people, they may petition Congress to be admitted into the Union; when their petition is granted, it becomes a State. It is in this way, that all the Western, and three of the Southern States, have become members of the Union, within a little more than thirty years. It is probable that other States will soon be formed in the wide regions of the Western country, and become members of the Union.

ellers? 23. How many Territories are there? What has a State? What do the governor and legislature of a State do? Who choose them? 24. Has a Territory a legislature? Who make the laws for the Territories? Who appoint the governors? 25. Upon whom are the Territories dependent? What of the people of the several States? How may a Territory become a State? What of all the Western and three of the Southern States?

CHAP. XLVII.

THE UNITED STATES.

1. We have now completed our survey of the individual States; but I have some more things to tell you about our country. You perceive by the Map of the United States, that it is crossed by two great chains of mountains, and is watered by several great

Questions on the Map of the United States. New England, Middle States, Southern States, and Western States.—Boundaries of the United States? What five great lakes lie along the northern boundaries of the U. S.? What river forms the outlet to these lakes? What great range of mountains runs from northeast to southwest in the eastern part of the U. S.? *Note.* The several ranges of mountains which extend from N. England to Georgia, including the Green Mountains in N. England, the Catskill in N. York, the Blue Ridge, Alleghanies, and Cumberland Mountains in the Middle and Southern States, may be considered as one great chain, and usually pass under the title of the Appalachian chain.—What great range of mountains in the western part of the U. S.? In which direction does this range run? *Note.* The Rocky Mountains are a part of the great chain that extends from the southern part of S. America to the northern part of N. America. This is the longest chain of mountains in the world, being near 11,000 miles long. The tops of some of the Rocky Mountains are very lofty, and are always covered with snow.—What is the largest river in the U. S.? *Note.* The river Mississippi, including the Missouri, which flows into it, is the longest in the world, being about 4500 miles long.—Describe the Mississippi R., Missouri, Ohio, Susquehannah, Delaware, Hudson, Connecticut, Maryland, Kennebeck, Penobscot. Tell the names of those States that touch upon the Atlantic. Those that touch upon the Gulf of Mexico. Tell the names of those States that have no sea-board. Tell the name of each capital of each State, with its direction from Washington, from Philadelphia, from New York, and from where you are. Tell the extent of each State, beginning at the largest, and proceeding in the order of their extent. Tell the number of inhabitants of each State, beginning with that which has the most, and proceeding according to population.

rivers. You will observe that all the rivers east of the Appalachian chain, flow into the Atlantic. Those west of the Rocky Mountains, flow into the Pacific. The rivers between these two chains of mountains empty their waters into the Mississippi, which are thus conducted to the Gulf of Mexico.

2. Our country may be divided into three parts; that which lies east of the Alleghanies; that which lies west of the Rocky Mountains; and that which lies between the two. The first part is that which was first settled, and which is most thickly inhabited. It abounds in rivers, and sea-ports, and embraces those portions of the country which were settled before the American Revolution.

3. The second division of our country, lying west of the Rocky Mountains, is yet a mere wilderness, inhabited only by scattered bands of savages. The third division, which usually passes under the title of the Valley of the Mississippi, is the most extensive and the most fertile section of the United States. Almost all the settlements here are of recent date, yet everything is flourishing. Emigrants are flocking to it from all parts of the world, and towns and villages are springing up in every quarter.

4. It is not easy to form an adequate idea of this great valley. The State of Ohio does not embrace more than one thirtieth part of it. Yet this State has almost a million of inhabitants. What a vast population, then, will, in the course of a few years, be spread over the great Valley of the Mississippi!

1. What of mountains? Rivers? 2. How may the U. States be divided? What of the first part? The second? The third? 3. Settlements in the Valley of the Mississippi? Emigrants? Towns and villages? 5. Where is

5. I will now tell you of the city of Washington, which you will find on the Map, between Maryland and Virginia. This is the capital of the United States.



Members of Congress going to the Capitol

Here there is a large and splendid edifice, called the Capitol. In this building, people, sent from all the twentyfour States, collect together in two bodies. One of them, when assembled, is called the House of Representatives; the other is called the Senate. These persons meet every winter to make laws for the country, and when assembled are called Congress.

6. The President of the United States lives in a large house about a mile from the Capitol. When any law has been passed by Congress, it is sent to him. If he approves of it, then it is published and the people are obliged to obey it.

7. The President is chosen every four years, by electors selected for that purpose. Andrew Jackson is now, 1831, President of the United States. He

the city of Washington? What splendid building at Washington? Describe the picture. Who assemble in this building? What are the names of the two bodies that assemble in the Capitol? For what purpose do the Senate and House of Representatives meet? What is Congress? 6. Where does the President of the U. S. live? When a law has been passed by Congress, what is done with it? What if the President approve of it?

came into office on the 4th of March, 1829. The President that preceded him, was John Quincy Adams, who came into office in March, 1825. James Monroe preceded him; he was twice elected President, and came first into the office in 1817.

8. James Madison preceded Monroe, and was also twice elected. He first came into the office in 1809. It was during his administration, that the late war with England took place, during which the famous battle of New Orleans was fought, as I have told you.

9. Thomas Jefferson preceded Madison, and was twice chosen President. He first entered upon the duties of his office in 1801. Before him John Adams, father of John Quincy Adams, was President four years. He was preceded by George Washington the first President of the United States, who was twice elected, and first entered upon the duties of the office in 1789.

10. At that time the present government was organized, and the present Constitution went into operation. Thus we have had six Presidents beside the present one, all of whom were natives of Virginia, except the two Adamses, who were natives of Massachusetts. All the Presidents are now living, except Washington, Jefferson, and the elder Adams. General Jackson, who is now

7. How is the President chosen? Who is President of the U. S. now? When did he come into office? What of John Quincy Adams? James Monroe? 8. James Madison? What war occurred during Madison's administration? 9. What of Thomas Jefferson? John Adams? Who was the first President of the U. S.? When did Washington first enter upon the duties of his office as President? 10. When was the present government of the U. S. organized? When did the present Constitution of the U. S. go into operation? How many Presidents have there been beside the present? How many of them were na-

President, is a native of South Carolina. During the American Revolution, he was a soldier, and in the late war with England, he commanded the American troops, in the southern part of the United States. He defeated the British at New Orleans with dreadful slaughter, and showed himself an able general.

11. You perceive our present government has been going on since the year 1789, a period of more than forty years. During this time, our country has enjoyed great prosperity. Our population has rapidly increased, our towns and villages have multiplied, our commerce, agriculture, and manufactures have been extended, and the number of our States, originally but thirteen, has been advanced to twentyfour.

12. But what happened before the year 1789? An event of more importance than any other which has ever occurred in our country: I mean the American Revolution. This began in 1775, and lasted for eight years. Previous to this event, the settlements in this country were mere colonies, subject to Great Britain: after it, these became one great nation, which now consists of twentyfour separate States, all united, however, under one general government.

13. Before the Revolution, a famous war broke out, often called the 'Old French War.' I shall now give you some account of it, and then I shall proceed to tell you of the Revolution.

tives of Virginia? Which of them natives of Massachusetts? Which of the Presidents are living? Which are dead? 11. How long has our present government been in operation? What of our country since 1789? Its population? Towns and villages? Commerce, agriculture and manufactures? 12. What of the American Revolution? What of the settlements in this country, before the Revolution? What of them after the Revolution? 13. What of the 'Old French war?'

CHAP. XLVIII.

THE FRENCH WAR.

1. This war began about the year 1755. At that period the country now occupied by New England, the five Middle States, and the four Southern States lying along the Atlantic, embraced thirteen colonies, all belonging to Great Britain, and all acknowledging the government of that country. My reader will recollect that none of the country lying west of the States above mentioned, was then occupied by English settlers.

2. The French had settlements in Canada, extending from the mouth of the St Lawrence, to Lake Ontario. Along the shores of that lake, they had established several forts, and trading houses, to promote their trade with the Indians, which was now esteemed a matter of great consequence. They had also planted New Orleans near the mouth of the Mississippi, and having ascended that river, laid claim to the beautiful and fertile valley, through which it flows.

3. They had also built trading houses on the River Ohio, and finally determined to connect their northern and southern settlements, by a chain of forts, extending from Lake Ontario to their establishments on the Ohio, and thence

Questions on the Map of the United States.

—Describe the river St Lawrence, Lake Ontario, the Mississippi, Ohio. Where is Quebec? Montreal? Canada? In which direction is New Orleans from Quebec? In which direction is Quebec from Boston and New York?

Questions on the Map of New York.—Where is Lake Champlain? Ticonderoga? Crown Point? Fort Henry? Fort Edward? Lake Ontario? Niagara?

Questions on the Map of the Middle States.—In which direction is Pittsburg from Philadelphia? New York? Lake Champlain? Niagara?

down the River Mississippi to New Orleans.

4. While the French were busy in carrying this project into effect, some English people from Virginia established themselves on the Ohio River not far from the French settlements. As the French now claimed the country, they seized some of these settlers, and carried them prisoners to Canada.

5. Now the land in question was considered as a part of the colony of Virginia by the English, and it was supposed to belong to certain English people to whom it had been granted. These persons, regarding the conduct of the French as very wrong, applied to Gov. Dinwiddie, of Virginia, for redress.

6. The governor thought it best in the first place to send a messenger to the commander of the French forces, on the Ohio, and require him to march his troops away, and thus quit the country. The person chosen for this purpose was George Washington, then but twenty-one years old. At this early age, he began that public career which has endeared his name to every American, and rendered it illustrious throughout the world.

7. Washington went to the French commander, and delivered to him a letter from Gov. Dinwiddie explaining the nature of his business. The French officer replied that he would forward the letter to his general, who was then in Canada, and that he should strictly abide by his instructions.

1. When did the French war begin? What of the country at that period? 2. French settlements? Forts and trading houses? New Orleans? Valley of the Mississippi? 3. Other trading houses? What did the French determine to do? 4. What of some English settlers from Virginia? What did the French do to these settlers? 5. What did Gov. Dinwiddie do? What of George Washington? 7. What reply did the French com-

8. This answer did not satisfy Gov. Dinwiddie; so he raised four hundred troops, and sent them under the command of Washington against the French, in the spring of 1754. They proceeded through the woods, and over the mountains till they came near Fort Du Quesne, where Pittsburg in Pennsylvania now stands.

9. When Washington had nearly reached this fort, about nine hundred French soldiers came out to attack him. He had scarcely time to throw up some hasty works for defence, before the French came upon him. The number of the French was more than double that of the English, but Washington did not mind that; he cheered his men, and they fought very bravely. By and by, the French were tired of the battle, and so they made an agreement with Washington, that he and his men should return to Virginia, which they did accordingly.

10. Being informed of all these things, the British government perceived that they must either drive the French away by force, or relinquish the whole Valley of the Mississippi. They determined to do the former, and sent out a great many troops to America to accomplish this object. In the spring of 1755, Gen. Braddock, an English officer, began to make preparations in Virginia, to proceed with a large army against Fort Du Quesne.

11. Now I must tell you that it is necessary for an army that is going on a march, to have a great number of

horses and wagons to carry their baggage. It was found very difficult to procure enough of these; and Gen. Braddock, becoming impatient, determined to set out with a part of the army only. Accordingly he proceeded with twelve hundred men, leaving Col. Dunbar to come on with the rest of the troops, as soon as the preparations were ready. Gen. Braddock was a brave man, and knew very well how to manage a battle with regular soldiers, but he knew nothing of the Indian method of skulking behind trees, and rocks, and thickets, and shooting down men like so many squirrels.

12. So he proceeded on through the woods, trusting in his own skill, and fearing nothing. He was advised to be on his guard, lest the sly savages should surprise him. But he treated this counsel with scorn. On the 9th of July, the English troops had approached within a few miles of Fort Du Quesne. At length they came to a narrow valley, with high rocks on each side. It was midsummer, and the trees were covered with a thick mantle of leaves. All was peaceful and quiet around, and the troops marched on, never dreaming that behind every bush, and rock, and tree around, lay a lurking savage taking a sure aim, and ready to send a fatal bullet to the heart.

13. At once, a wild and hideous yell burst from the rocky sides of the valley, and at the same instant, hundreds of muskets flashed from the many hiding-places of the foe. Astounded at this,

mander send to Gov. Dinwiddie? 8. What did the governor then do? When was this? What did Washington and the 400 soldiers do? Where was Fort Du Quesne? *Note.* This is pronounced Du Kane.—9. When Washington came near this fort, what did the French do? What of Washington? How did the English fight? What agreement was made? 10. What of the British

government? What did they do? What took place in the spring of 1755? 11. What of an army going on a march? Why did Gen. Braddock become impatient? What did he do? Character of Gen. Braddock? 12. How was Gen. B. advised? Where was the army on the 9th of July? To what place did they at length come? What of the season, trees, &c.? Describe

the forward ranks of the English were thrown into confusion. But in a few minutes, Gen. Braddock came up, with the main body of the army, and order was restored; but it was to no purpose. The enemy did not come out in regular platoons to be fired at, as Gen. Braddock expected; they remained in their coverts, and shot down the British soldiers like a herd of deer.

14. Braddock was too proud to retreat. He and his officers remained on the ground, bravely exerting themselves to overcome the enemy; but in this they only sacrificed their lives. One by one they were shot down, and Braddock at length fell. The British soldiers then fled in dismay. Washington with his Virginia troops, sheltered the flying army from the French and Indians who pursued them.

15. But for him, nearly all the men under Braddock's command would have fallen a sacrifice to his rashness. As it was, one half of the number perished in the battle. This disastrous enterprise was closed by a return of the troops to Philadelphia, leaving the frontier of Pennsylvania and Virginia exposed to the enemy.

16. Two other expeditions were undertaken against the French, during the summer of 1755. One was against Fort Niagara, situated near the great cataract, and the other against Crown Point, an important post on the western shore of Lake Champlain. Both of these expeditions were unsuccessful.

the attack of the Indians and French upon the English army. What was the first effect of this attack? What did Gen. Braddock do? What did the enemy do? 14. What of Braddock and his officers? What took place after Braddock was killed? What of Washington? 15. What part of the English troops were killed? What did the remainder of the English army do? 16. What other expeditions were undertaken in 1755? How did these expeditions terminate?

CHAP. XLIX.

FRENCH WAR--CONTINUED.

1. In the spring of 1756, great preparations were made for war in America, both by the French and English, yet it is remarkable that the two nations in Europe yet continued to be on terms of the greatest apparent friendship; but this did not last long. England declared war in May, and France in June following.

2. A great many troops were assembled in America, but instead of being placed under the command of American officers, who were well acquainted with the country, and who would of course be anxious to carry on the war with success, they were commanded by British officers, who spent a great deal of time in show and parade, but did very little more. The whole season was wasted in indolence on the part of the English, while the French prosecuted the war with activity and vigor.

3. The next year, 1757, was like that which preceded it. The king and parliament of Great Britain were jealous of the colonies at this early date. They were not willing to entrust native Americans with the direction of affairs, and therefore continued to employ the officers who had exhibited nothing but indolence and weakness before.

4. The principal event of this campaign, was the capture of Fort Wil-

1. What of the spring of 1756? What is remarkable? When did England declare war? *Note.* This war is generally spoken of, as having commenced in 1756, because war was not declared till that time; but we have seen that hostilities commenced nearly two years before.—2. What of British troops? Under whose command were they placed? What of the British officers? What of the French? 3. What of the year 1757? King

liam Henry. This was situated on Lake George, and had a garrison of three thousand men under the command of Col. Munroe. Fifteen miles to the south of this post, was Fort Edward, on the east side of the Hudson River, occupied by Gen. Webb, with four thousand troops.

5. The French commander, Montcalm, collected near ten thousand men, many of them Indians, and suddenly appeared before Fort William Henry. They came sailing down the Lake, covering its bright surface with a multitude of boats and canoes. The whole army landed, and immediately began the attack.

6. Col. Munroe was surprised, but not disheartened. Though his little garrison was surrounded by ten thousand men, he made a bold and successful defence. The soldiers kept off the enemy with muskets, and with cannon, which shook the hills around with their thunder, and often sent death among the ranks of the besiegers.

7. Thus for six days was the fort defended; but Col. Munroe knew he could not hold out long, unless assistance came from Gen. Webb. He sent to that officer repeatedly, entreating him for help, but none came. Thus deserted in the most cowardly and cruel manner, he was obliged to surrender the fort to Montcalm. The English marched out of the fort, and the French took possession of it. But the saddest part of this story I have yet to tell. Montcalm promised to protect the English prisoners from the savages;

but this he failed to do. They first fell upon the sick, and plundered and killed them; thus they became excited, and surrounding the defenceless English soldiers, who had no means of defence, began to slay them.

8. There were several thousands of the savages, and they now filled the air with their horrid yells. They struck down the English with their tomahawks, and tore the reeking scalps from their heads. As the slaughter proceeded, they grew more frantic. Their yells became still more wild, and these were now mingled with the shrieks of the wounded and the dying. At this awful moment, Munroe besought Montcalm to protect his poor soldiers, as he had promised; but that officer would not interfere. His bloody allies were permitted to do their work of death, without restraint. The carnage went on, and hundreds of the British soldiers were slaughtered or carried captives into the wilderness.

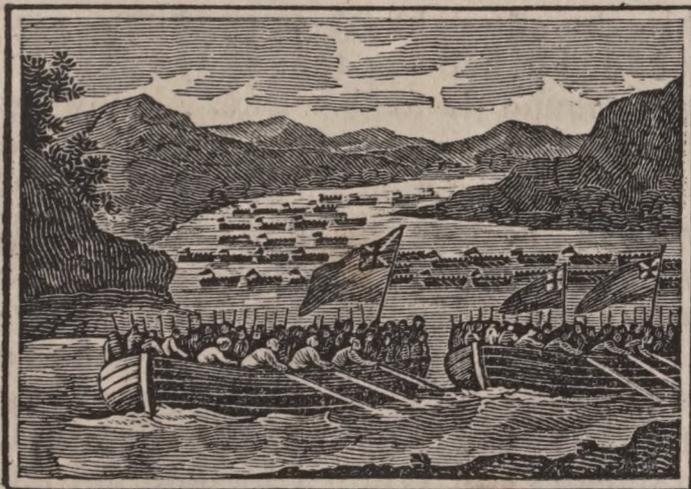
9. The day after this fearful tragedy, Major Putnam was sent by Gen. Webb, to watch the motions of the enemy. They had already left the place, and set out for Ticonderoga. They had destroyed the fort, leaving the buildings still on fire. The ground, far and near, was covered with dead bodies, cut and mangled in the most shocking manner. Some were still broiling in the flames, and others were torn limb from limb. Thus ended this melancholy affair. Although it occurred near a hundred years ago, we can hardly fail to shudder at the detail of such barbarities.

and parliament? 4. Principal event of 1757? Fort Wm Henry? Fort Edward? Gen. Webb? 5. Montcalm? 6. Col. Munroe? 7. How was the fort defended? Gen. Webb? What was Col. Munroe obliged to do? What did Montcalm promise? The savages? 8. Describe the man-

ner in which the Indians killed the English. What did Munroe do? Did Montcalm endeavor to restrain the savages? What of the British soldiers? 9. Major Putnam? What had the enemy done? Describe the scene. How long since

10. The next year, 1758, the war wore a different aspect. William Pitt, a man of great talents, was placed at the head of affairs in England. He caused new officers to be appointed to command the armies, and the result showed that he selected them wisely. Louisburg, a strong town on the island of Cape Breton, which had been before captured from the French in 1744, and afterwards restored to them, was taken by Lord Amherst, and Fort Du Quesne was taken by Gen. Forbes.

11. Lord Abercrombie was sent with an army of seventeen thousand men, against Ticonderoga. This was a strong French fort, on the western shore of Lake Champlain. The English army crossed the lake in boats. It was truly a magnificent display, as they covered the blue water, seeming as countless as the wild fowl, that sometimes hover over its surface.



Abercrombie's Army crossing Lake Champlain.

12. But amid this proud array, there was many a heart bounding with youth and hope, destined soon to beat no more. When the English had landed, they marched toward the fort. They were met by a small party of the

this event occurred? 10. What of William Pitt? Louisburg? Fort Du Quesne? 11. Lord Abercrombie? Ticonderoga? What of the English army crossing the lake? Describe the

French, and in a skirmish that followed, Lord Howe was killed. He was a brave young officer, and all the soldiers loved him. When they saw him fall dead upon the field, they rushed forward, determined to avenge his death. They surrounded the fort, and attacked it with the greatest fury. They had muskets and cannon, and they kept up a continual fire against the walls of the fort. If a Frenchman showed his head over the ramparts, he was immediately shot by the British soldiers.

13. They tried every means in their power to get possession of the place. They procured ladders, and attempted to climb over the walls. For four hours they stormed the fort with the utmost boldness and bravery; but it was defended with equal courage. The French poured down from the walls a dreadful fire of cannon and musketry. The noise of the battle was heard to the distance of fifty miles. It seemed like continued thunder; a thick cloud of smoke rose up from the place, and stretching itself far across the sky, appeared to tell of the awful scene it had witnessed.

14. Finding it impossible to take the Fort, Lord Abercrombie was forced to abandon the enterprise. Two thousand of his men had been killed or wounded; and with this heavy loss he retreated. He however despatched three thousand men under Colonel Bradstreet, against Fort Frontenac, situated on Lake Ontario. This place was taken, and the French were thus deprived of a station of great importance.

picture. 12. What occurred when the English had landed? What of Lord Howe? What followed his death? Describe the battle. 14. What was Lord Abercrombie forced to do? What was the loss of the English? Fort Frontenac?

15. In the next year, 1759, several important places were taken by the English. Among these were the forts of Niagara, Ticonderoga, and Crown Point; but the most important event was the capture of Quebec.

16. This place, situated on the Northwest side of the St. Lawrence, was deemed one of the strongest in the world. It was defended by a great many cannon, placed in several forts, built upon high rocks. It was thought impossible for soldiers in any way to climb up these rocks, or to get possession of the fortifications.

17. But William Pitt believed that the place might be taken; so he sent a large and powerful army against it, commanded by Gen. Wolfe. This officer was a young man, full of bold and daring thoughts. Three officers, Monton, Townshend, and Murray, all young and brave like himself, were associated with him.

18. It was toward the last of June, that the English army landed on the island of Orleans, a few miles below Quebec. Here Wolfe had an opportunity to examine the difficulties he had to overcome. He perceived that they were very great, but declared to his friends, that he would either take the city, or die in the attempt. He devised various schemes, and made several efforts, but without success. Montcalm, the French commander, was exceedingly vigilant, and even the confident spirit of Wolfe began to be dejected.

19. But at length a narrow path was discovered, by which the soldiers

might climb the Heights of Abraham and thus overlook the forts, and the town. Wolfe knew that if he could get possession of these heights, he should obtain a great advantage. Accordingly, he resolved to make the attempt. But it was necessary that the enterprise should be conducted with the greatest secrecy.

20. In the stillness of night a part of the army landed at the foot of the cliff, which overhung the river. They were ready to climb the rocks by day break. Wolfe was himself among them, and they began their difficult task. Clambering up the steep, they caught hold of roots, bushes and angles of the rocks, and at length stood safe upon the plain above. Before sunrise, the whole army had gained the heights, and were all arranged under their several leaders.

21. When Montcalm heard of all this, he thought it impossible, and would not believe the story; but he soon found it to be true. Knowing that he must now come to battle, he drew out his men upon the plain in front of the English army. When all was ready, the French advanced briskly. The English stood still, and received them with a dreadful fire. A fierce engagement followed, and after a long struggle, the French were defeated. Montcalm and Wolfe were both mortally wounded.

22. The latter died on the field of battle. He had received a bullet in his wrist, and another in his leg, but he concealed these wounds, and pressed

15. What of 1759? What forts were taken? Situation of Quebec? Its direction from Boston? From Hartford? From New York? How was Quebec defended? What was thought of the fortifications? 17. What of William Pitt? What of Gen. Wolfe? What young officers were associated with Wolfe? 18. What of the English

army? What of Wolfe? Montcalm? 19. What was at length discovered? 20. How did the British army get possession of the Heights of Abraham? 21. What of Montcalm? How did the French army advance? How did the English receive them? What of the battle? Montcalm and Wolfe? 22. How was Wolfe wounded?

into the thickest of the fight; but by and by he was shot in the body, and carried off the field. When he was dying, he heard some one say, 'They fly! they fly!' 'Who fly?' said he. 'The French,' was the answer. 'Then I die contented,' said the hero, and expired.

23. Five days after this battle, Quebec surrendered to the English, and has ever since remained in their possession. It is the capital of the British possessions in America, and the governor, appointed by the king, lives there.

24. The next year, the French made some feeble attempts to recover Quebec, but without success. In September, Montreal was taken by the English, and in 1663 the war was closed by a peace, made at Paris. By this treaty, France ceded to England all her northern colonies, and these still remain subject to Great Britain.

25 Thus I have told you of the 'Old French War.' All the thirteen colonies were engaged in it, and they furnished a great many troops, who went to Canada, and assisted in the battles I have described. I have frequently met with old men, as I have told you before, who were soldiers in that famous war. But it is now seventy years since these things happened, and nearly all those who acted a part in the scenes of that day, are numbered with the dead. Perhaps you may meet with some gray-haired old man, who will tell you that he fought with Wolfe, on the Heights of Abraham. If you should ever do so, you should ask him to tell you the story of that celebrated affair.

Describe his death. 23. What of Quebec? What of the French the next year? Montreal? What occurred in 1663? To whom do the Canadas now belong? 25. What of the thirteen colonies? How long since the French war?

CHAP. L.

THE REVOLUTION.

1. We are now coming to events of great interest, and great importance. Soon after the French war, the king and parliament of Great Britain began to treat the colonies in a very unjust manner. They had never conducted generously to them; on the contrary, their proceedings had generally shown a desire to make them profitable to England, rather than prosperous and happy among themselves.

2. Yet the people in this country loved England so well, that they easily forgot these things, and it is probable that all might have gone on in harmony for many years, if the British government had not attempted to oppress and enslave the people.

3. It is hardly necessary to tell you of all the difficulties which preceded the war; but I will endeavor to make you understand the principal one. The British government, being very much in debt, wanted to raise large sums of money, and so determined to get a part of it by taxing the Americans. Now the latter maintained that England had no right to tax them. They thought it very hard and very unjust, that Parliament, consisting of men who lived in England, at a distance of 3000 miles, should take away the money of the people here, just because they happened to want it. Yet this was what Par-

1. What of the king and parliament soon after the French war? How had the colonies been treated by the government of England? 2. What of the people of this country? 3. What was the principal difficulty between England and the colonies, which led to the Revolution? What did the Americans think? What did Parliament claim a right to do? What did Parliament do? What effect had these acts? People of Boston? Gen-

liament claimed the right to do, and acted accordingly.

4. In opposing this, the Americans were perfectly right; but still parliament passed laws, imposing duties upon various articles of merchandise, brought into the country. These acts produced a great ferment throughout the colonies. The people in Boston were particularly excited; and fearing rebellion, Gen. Gage, the British commander, assembled two regiments of soldiers, to keep them in awe.

5. These troops took possession of the State-house without leave, and there they lived. They paraded about the streets, and filled the ears of the inhabitants with the constant din of their music.

6. Now my reader will recollect that these were foreign soldiers, sent with cannon, muskets and bayonets, to restrain a people who considered themselves free. It is easy to perceive, that all this was not calculated to soothe their jealous feelings; on the contrary, it exasperated the people, and prepared them to take up arms against their oppressors.

7. Such was the state of irritation in Boston in the spring of 1770, that quarrels occurred almost every day, between the soldiers and the populace. On the second of March, as one of the British soldiers was going by the shop of one Gray, a rope-maker, he was beaten severely. He ran off, but returned with some of his comrades, and the soldiers and rope-makers fell together by the ears in good earnest. The latter got the worst of it.

8. The people were now more

eral Gage. 5. British troops? 6. What effect was produced by these things upon the feelings of the people in Boston? 7. What of the spring

angry than ever. A great tumult broke out, between seven and eight o'clock, on the evening of the 5th of March. The mob, armed with clubs, ran toward King Street, now State Street, crying, 'Let us drive out these rascals! They have no business here! Drive them out! Drive out the rascals!' About this time, some one cried out, that the town had been set on fire. Then the bells rang, and the crowd became greater, and more noisy; they rushed furiously to the custom-house, and, seeing an English soldier stationed there, shouted, 'Kill him! kill him!' The people attacked him with snow-balls, pieces of ice, and whatever they could find.

9. The sentinel called for the guard, and Captain Preston sent a corporal with a few soldiers to defend him. They marched with their guns loaded, and the Captain followed them. They met a crowd of the people, led on by a giant of a negro, named Attucks; they brandished their clubs, and pelted the soldiers with snow-balls, abused them



People attacking the Soldiers.

with all manner of harsh words, shouted in their faces, surrounded them, and challenged them to fire.

10. They even rushed upon the points of the bayonets. The soldiers

of 1770? What occurred on the 2d of March? 8. What occurred on the evening of the 5th of March?

stood like statues, the bells ringing, and the mob pressing upon them. At last, Attucks, with twelve of his men, began to strike upon their muskets with clubs, and cried out to the multitude, 'Do n't be afraid! They dare not fire—the miserable cowards! Kill the rascals! Crush them under foot!' Attucks lifted his arm against Captain Preston, and seized upon a bayonet. 'They dare not fire!' shouted the mob again. At this instant, the firing began. The negro dropped dead upon the ground. The soldiers fired twice more. Three men were killed, and others were wounded. The mob dispersed, but soon returned to carry off the bodies.

11. The whole town was now in an uproar. Thousands of men, women and children, rushed through the streets. The sound of drums, and cries of 'To arms! to arms!' were heard from all quarters. The soldiers who had fired on the people, were arrested, and the governor, at last, persuaded the multitude to go home quietly. The troops were ordered off to Castle William the next morning. The three slain citizens were buried with great ceremony, on the 8th; the shops were all closed; while the bells in Boston, and the towns around, were all tolling.

12. The bodies were followed to the churchyard, from King Street, through the city, by a long file of coaches, and an immense crowd of people on foot. The soldiers were soon after tried. Two were condemned and imprisoned; six of them were acquitted, much to the honor of the jury, and of John Adams and Josiah Quincy, who

11. What was done with the soldiers who fired upon the people? What of the British troops? The burial of the slain citizens? 12. Trial of the soldiers?

pleaded for them. The irritated and unreasonable populace would have torn the soldiers in pieces, if they could have had their way.

CHAP. LI.

REVOLUTION.—CONTINUED.

1. In March, 1771, the English Parliament concluded to repeal the duties upon glass, paint, &c., but retained a tax of threepence a pound upon tea. This was a sad mistake. If Parliament had repealed all, and said no more about taxes, the Americans might still have been satisfied. As it was, they began to buy the goods of the English merchants again, tea alone excepted; this they would have nothing to do with.

2. So matters went on, during the year 1771. The officers of the revenue were everywhere despised. In Boston, one of them undertook to seize upon a vessel, for some violation of the law. He was seized upon himself by the people, for what they thought a violation of the law, stripped, carted through the town, besmeared with tar, and plastered over with a coat of feathers, so that he looked more like an ostrich than a man.

3. In 1772, the English government, intending to put down the rebellious spirit of the Americans, made several new laws, which only served to increase the difficulty. The Americans now began to think of doing something for themselves in earnest. Committees were chosen in every part of the coun-

1. What was done in March, 1771? What did the Americans do? Why would they not buy tea of the English? 2. The year 1771? Officers of the revenue? What did the people do with one of these officers? 3. What was done

try, to attend to public affairs, and to write to each other.

4. In 1773, large ships, loaded with immense cargoes of tea, were sent out to America, by some merchants in England. But the colonists had made up their minds what to do. In Philadelphia and New York, not a man could be found to receive the English tea, or have anything to do with it. A few chests, which one Captain Chambers had brought to Philadelphia, were let down very quietly to the bottom of the river, by some people, who went slyly on board the ship. In Charleston, it was landed and lodged in cellars so damp, that it was soon spoiled.

5. The people of Boston took a keen interest in this business. The English agents there, when the tea was first known to be coming, were required by the people to give up all concern with it. They made no answer, but withdrew as fast as convenient into the fortress. Captain Hall soon arrived in port with one hundred chests of tea. The people collected in great fury, ordered him to keep it on board, as he valued his life, and placed a guard, and a strict watch close by the vessel, upon Griffin's Wharf.

6. Two other vessels having arrived, they were obliged to anchor by the side of Hall's ship. A town meeting, meanwhile, was summoned; and the people agreed to call upon the governor, and request him to have the ships sent off. But the governor would do no such thing. A great uproar now began.

in 1772? What of the Americans? 4. What was done in 1773? New York and Philadelphia? Captain Chambers and his tea? What was done in Charleston? 5. English agents in Boston? Capt. Hall? What did the people do? 6. Town meeting? 7. How were 340 chests of tea destroyed? 8. What occurred in 1774? Boston Port Bill? 9. Other laws? What did the peo-

A person in the gallery of the hall, dressed like an Indian, shouted the cry of war.

7. The meeting was dissolved in the twinkling of an eye, and the multitude rushed to Griffin's Wharf. Here were seventeen sea captains, carpenters, and others, disguised as Indians. It was night, and these persons went on board the three vessels, and, in less than two hours, three hundred and forty chests were staved and emptied into the sea. This done, they went quietly home; and the crowd dispersed, very well satisfied.

8. Early in 1774, an account of these disturbances having reached England, the government then determined, by way of punishing the people of Boston, to destroy the trade of that town, by forbidding all manner of goods to be landed there. Accordingly, the Boston Port Bill was passed in Parliament, March 14th, and the news was received in Boston, May 10th. Like other unjust laws, this also did more hurt than good.

9. In a few days after the Port Bill was passed, other laws were made, still more severe. They were opposed in England, by some persons, but a large part, both of the parliament and people, supposed, if the Americans were punished and frightened pretty well, they would, by and by, be more submissive to the mother country. This was another sad mistake.

10. Not only the people of Boston, but the whole people of America, North, South, East, and West, were more indignant than ever. Town meetings were held, days of fasting appointed, and news of the Port Bill spread over the whole country. An agreement to stop all trade with England, called the

ple and parliament of England think? 10. What of the people of America? League and cov-

league and covenant,' was signed by immense numbers.

11. Those who refused to sign it, were hooted at, as enemies of the country. General Gage, at Boston, issued a proclamation against the league, and declared it treasonable. But these were mere words; and the Bostonians published in return, that the General's proclamation was treason.

12. On the first of June, the Port Bill was put in force. At midday, all business ceased in the custom house; no vessel was suffered to enter the harbor. Very little was now done, for the rich had no money to spare, and the poor had no employment. The soldiers paraded the streets in triumph.

13. But the Bostonians were not forgotten. The country was awake on all sides. The first of June was kept as a fast day, in many places. In Philadelphia, the shops were shut, and the bells tolled. The people of Marblehead and Salem, offered the Boston merchants their harbors, wharves, and warehouses, free of all cost; and large sums of money, and other things, collected in all parts of the country, were sent into Boston.

14. Serious preparations began to be made for war. People provided themselves with arms, formed companies, and learned, as fast as possible, the business of soldiers. Being most of them used to hunting, they were good marksmen. In all places, nothing was heard but the noise of drums and fifes. Fathers and sons, young and old, became soldiers; and even women and girls set about casting balls and making cartridges.

15. Meanwhile, the jealousy of the

people toward the soldiers continued to increase. Even the children caught the general feeling, as a story will show you. During the winter, before the Port Bill passed, the boys were in the habit of building hills of snow on the Common, and sliding down upon them to the Pond. The English troops beat down these hills, merely to provoke them. The boys complained of the injury, and set about repairing it. However, when they returned from school, they found the snow hills beat down again.

16. Several of the boys now waited upon the British captain, and informed him of the conduct of his soldiers; but he would have nothing to say to them; and the soldiers were more impudent than ever. At last, they called a meeting of the largest boys, and sent them to General Gage, Commander in Chief.

17. He asked why so many children had called upon him. 'We came, sir,' said the tallest boy, 'to demand satisfaction.' 'What,' said the General, 'have your fathers been teaching you rebellion, and sent you to show it here?' 'Nobody sent us, sir,' answered the boy, while his cheek reddened, and his eye flashed; 'we have never injured, nor insulted your troops; but they have trodden down our snow hills, and broken the ice on our skating ground. We complained, and they called us young rebels, and told us to help ourselves if we could. We told the captain of this, and he laughed at us. Yesterday our works were destroyed for a third time; and, sir, we will bear it no longer.'

18. The General looked at them with admiration, and said to an officer at his side, 'The very children draw in a love of liberty with the air they

enant? 11. Gen. Gage? Bostonians? 12. Port Bill? 13. Bostonians? First of June? Philadelphia? People of Marblehead and Salem?

Money and other things? 14. What preparations were made for war? 15. Jealousy of the people? Story of boys in Boston?

breathe.—You may go, my brave boys; and be assured, if my troops trouble you again, they shall be punished.'

CHAP. LII.

REVOLUTION.—CONTINUED.

1. I have now told you something which preceded the Revolutionary War. You see by what I have told you, that the people in all parts of the country were resolved to resist the oppression of the British government. Slowly and reluctantly had they come to the decision; but now that the spirit of the nation was roused, they were ready to go into the field, and shed their blood in the sacred cause of liberty.

2. In this state of things, nothing was wanting but some occasion which might call the feelings of the people into action; and this was not long delayed. There were some military stores at Concord, about 18 miles from Boston, belonging to the Americans. These Gen. Gage wished to destroy; and for this purpose he sent about 800 grenadiers and light infantry from Boston, at eleven o'clock in the evening of the 18th of April, 1775.

3. Notice of this was immediately carried into the country. By two o'clock in the morning, 130 of the Lexington militia had assembled on the green, at the meeting-house, to oppose them. They were dismissed, but collected again between four and five, at the beat of the drum. By and by the 800 British troops come marching up the road, Major Pitcairn at their head.

1. What had the people of the country resolved to do? 2. Military stores at Concord? What did Gen. Gage do? 3. Lexington militia? In which direction is Lexington from Boston? British troops? Major Pitcairn? What did the

'Disperse, you rebels!' cried the major, addressing the militia; 'throw down your arms and disperse!' They did not disperse, however. He now rode forward, discharged his pistol, brandished his sword, and ordered his soldiers to fire. They did so, and three or four of the Americans were killed. The soldiers shouted, fired again, and then proceeded toward Concord.

4. At Concord, they disabled two cannon, threw 500 pounds of ball into the wells, and staved about 60 barrels of flour. They fired upon the Concord militia, under Major Batterick's command. Two men were killed; a skirmish followed; and the English retreated, as fast as possible, to Lexington. By this time, the people were coming upon them from all parts of the country. The British were fired upon on all sides, from sheds, houses, and fences.

5. At Lexington, where they halted to rest, they were joined by 900 more troops, sent out from Boston, under Lord Percy. These brought two cannon with them; and the country people were kept back. They still fired upon the troops, however, and being generally good marksmen, made terrible havoc. The Regulars, as the English troops were called, reached Charlestown at sunset, and returned the next day into Boston. Sixtyfive of their number had been killed, one hundred and eighty wounded, and twentyeight made prisoners.

6. Of the Provincials, fifty were killed, and thirtyeight wounded, and missing. There were never more than

soldiers do? 4. What was done at Concord? What took place when the British had returned to Lexington? 5. Lord Percy? What did the Americans do? What were the English troops called? What of their return to Boston? How many were killed and wounded, and made prison-

three or four hundred of the latter fighting at one time, and these fought as they pleased, without order. The Regulars were obliged to keep in the main road; but the Militia, knowing every inch of the country, flanked them, and fired upon them at all the corners.

7. The news of this first battle produced a tremendous excitement throughout the country. The dead were buried with great ceremony. Great bodies of militia marched towards Boston, and agreements were entered into by thousands of people, to defend the Bostonians to the last gasp.

8. Everybody was armed and ready to fight. When the news of the Lexington battle reached Barnstable, a company of militia started off for Cambridge at once. In the front was a young man, the only child of an old farmer. As they came to the old gentleman's house, they halted a moment. The drum and fife ceased. The farmer came out with his gray head bare. 'God be with you all!' said he; 'and you, John, if you must fight, fight like a man, or never let me see you again.' The old man gave him his blessing. The poor fellow brushed a tear from his eye, and the company marched on.

9. I will tell you one or two more stories, which will make you understand the excitement produced by the battle of Lexington. The news reached a small town in Connecticut, on the morning of the sabbath. It was nearly time to go to meeting, when the beating of a drum, and the ringing of the bell, attracted the attention of the people.

10. In expectation that some great event was about to happen, every un-

usual signal had a startling effect. When the drum and the bell were heard, therefore, the men came running to the meeting-house green, in breathless haste. Soon the clergyman was among them, and they were all told, that some of their countrymen had been shot by the British soldiers, at Lexington. The faces of the men, as they heard it, were pale, but not from fear; it was immediately resolved, that thirty persons should be equipped, and set out for Boston. Those who could best go, were selected, and went home to make preparations.

11. At noon, they had all returned to the little lawn in front of the meeting-house. There was a crowd of people around. There were friends, and acquaintances, and wives and children. Such as were not well supplied with clothes, and equipments, were immediately furnished by their neighbors. Among the crowd, there was one remarkable individual. This was a rich old miser, who was never known to part with his money, but with extreme reluctance. On the present occasion, his nature seemed changed. He took several of the soldiers apart, whom he supposed likely to be destitute, and put into their hands, about thirty dollars of hard cash; at the same time saying, in a low voice, 'Beat the rascals! beat them! If you come back, perhaps you will pay me; if not, God bless you!'

12. After all the arrangements were made, the soldiers entered the broad aisle of the church. An affecting and fervent prayer was then offered by the clergyman, in behalf of the country, and in behalf of these brave men, that were about to enter upon the danger-

ers? 6. How many of the Provincials? How many Provincials were engaged in the battle? The Regulars? Militia? On what day did the

battle of Lexington occur? 7. What effect had the news of this battle? 8. Story of an old man at Barnstable? 9. Story of a small town in Con-

ous chances of war. After the prayer, he made a short but animated address, encouraging the men to do their duty. He pronounced a blessing, and then they departed.

13. I will now tell you about General Putnam. He was a brave man, and lived at Brooklyn, in Connecticut. He was a farmer, and was ploughing in the field, when the tidings from Lexington were brought to him. He did not stay even to unharness his cattle; but leaving the plough in the unfinished furrow, he went to his house, gave some hasty directions respecting his affairs, mounted his horse, and with a rapid pace proceeded to Boston.

14. In the course of a few weeks, 30,000 men had arrived from various parts of the country. They were indeed poorly armed, but they were full of resolution. Most of them were farmers and mechanics, who had spent their lives in peace, and knew nothing of war. But the blood of their countrymen had been spilled, and they had come to avenge their death. They had no cannon, no leaders, but little ammunition, and many of them had no guns. But in spite of these deficiencies, they were full of courage, and ready, as soon as an opportunity offered, to meet the British troops in open battle.

CHAP. LIII.

REVOLUTION.—CONTINUED.

1. I must beg my readers to pause here a moment, and consider the state of the country at this point of our story. It was not then, as now, full of wealth, and covered with large towns and cities.

necticut? 13. Gen. Putnam? 14. How many people had assembled at Boston in the course of a few weeks? What of them?

Boston, which now has 60,000 inhabitants, had then but 10,000. New York, Philadelphia, and other large places, were then comparatively small. The country was poor, and the whole number of inhabitants, throughout the thirteen colonies was scarcely 3,000,000; yet they were about to engage in a strife with Great Britain, the most powerful nation on the earth.

2. She had nearly one thousand ships of war, and the Americans had none. She had powerful armies, skilful generals, and an abundance of all the materials for making war. Such was indeed the poverty and apparent weakness of America, such the mighty power of England, that in Europe, it was generally believed that the Americans must be crushed in the struggle.

3. But our brave fathers thought not so. They knew the power of England, but they knew also that the race is not always to the swift, nor the battle to the strong. Placing their confidence in Heaven and the justice of their cause, they entered boldly into the contest, and, as we shall see in the end, triumphed over their oppressors.

4. The war having been opened by the battle of Lexington, the Americans determined to prosecute it on their part with vigor. They sent some soldiers against two British forts, Ticonderoga and Crown Point, both of which were easily captured. The militia invested Boston, and pretty soon the British troops, of which there were several thousands in that town, began to

1. State of the country at the commencement of the war? Boston? New York and Philadelphia? Population of the thirteen colonies? Great Britain? 2. Her navy? Armies? Generals, &c.? What was generally believed in Europe? 3. What of our forefathers? 4. The Americans? Ticonderoga and Crown Point? Mi-

feel a little uncomfortable. The Americans had two or three old rusty cannon, with which they blazed away upon the enemy, making a good deal of noise, and doing some execution.

5. Gen. Gage did not like to be cooped up in Boston, with his men, so he determined to cut through the militia with his troops, and take up some station in the country. To prevent this the Americans sent a thousand men by night to occupy Bunker Hill. By mistake they went to Breed's Hill, situated in Charlestown, and very near to Boston. At midnight they began to erect entrenchments, and working with all their might, they had thrown up a small redoubt eight rods square, by the dawn of day. The British were utterly astonished, when they saw what was going on. Knowing that the Americans could throw their cannon balls down upon them from the hill, they saw the necessity of immediately driving them away if possible.

6. It was now the 17th of June, and the British troops were soon put in motion. The whole town of Boston resounded with the noise of drums and fifes. Heavy columns of soldiers marched along the streets, and entered the boats to cross over to Breed's Hill. A great many cannon, from the British ships, and other places, opened their fire upon the Americans, and the balls went howling through the air, and ploughing up the ground, but doing little damage.

7. The Americans knew what was coming, and like men not to be turned from their purpose, labored steadily at their works. There were General Putnam, and Gen. Warren, and other brave leaders among them. There were no

idle hands, there were no coward hearts there: every man entered with his whole soul into the business of the awful crisis.

8. At length the British landed: some of them entered Charlestown, and set it on fire. The flames ran from house to house, until the whole town was involved in one vast blaze. Pretty soon the troops began to advance up the hill towards the Americans. The latter were now ready, and having placed themselves behind their breastworks, lay waiting for the enemy. There were gray-haired old men, with their sons and grandsons near them; there were neighbors, friends, and brothers, side by side.

9. The British advanced bravely. They were led by General Howe, and other gallant officers. With steady confidence they marched towards the American lines. It was now an awful moment. Thousands and thousands of people covered the hills, and houses, and steeples of Boston, that they might see the fight. The cannon, for a few minutes, ceased their roar; everything around seemed to pause and look with breathless interest upon the scene.

10. The British came on. The stillness of death rested upon the American lines. At length, the enemy had approached within a few rods, when at a given signal, a thousand bullets were suddenly hurled amid their ranks. For a few seconds, the Americans kept up a deadly fire, and the British were obliged to retreat. But they soon rallied, and came again upon the Americans. They were again driven back. Still a third time they rallied, and the Americans, having used up all their powder and ball, fought for some time

litia? British troops? Cannon? 5. Gen. Gage? What did the Americans do? Breed's Hill? The British? 6. What day was this? What took

place in Boston? What of the British cannon? The Americans? What leaders among the Americans? 8. The British? Charlestown? Describe

with the butt ends of their muskets, and then reluctantly retreated.

11. In this battle, 1054 of the British were killed and wounded; of the Americans, 453. The British officers were astonished at the result: they had despised the Americans before, and never imagined that a collection of people, who had not learnt the art of war, commanded by no experienced officers, and but poorly provided with arms and ammunition, could make such havoc among disciplined troops.

12. This battle, though it was fought on Breed's Hill, is called the battle of Bunker Hill. The Americans were driven back, indeed; but this happened only because their ammunition was expended. It gave the people great courage, for it showed that they could beat the British Regulars in a fair fight.

13. Yet the Americans, though they rejoiced at their partial success, had much occasion for sorrow. Many of their friends and neighbors had been killed, and among these was Gen. Warren, who was greatly beloved by all the people. He was fighting in the midst of the battle, when a British officer, who knew him, took a gun from a soldier, and shot him through the head.



Death of General Warren.

the battle. 11. Loss of the British? Of the Americans? British officers? 12. Where was the battle

CHAP. LIV.

REVOLUTION.—CONTINUED.

1. The people of the colonies, finding it necessary to have some general government, had sent some of their wisest men to Philadelphia, to manage public affairs. These were called the Continental Congress. They appointed George Washington of Virginia, Commander in Chief of the American Armies, and in about a fortnight after the battle of Bunker Hill, he reached Cambridge, three miles from Boston. He found about 14,000 militia in the neighborhood, and immediately began to exert himself to teach them the art of war.

2. I shall not be able to tell you of all the interesting events that occurred during the Revolution. The story of them would fill a large book. I shall only give you a few details, and leave you to read the whole history in some larger work. The war soon spread over the country, and many skirmishes took place between the provincials, and the British soldiers.

3. During the latter part of the year 1775, two expeditions were sent against Canada; one, consisting of 3000 men, was put under the command of Gen. Schuyler, and went by the way of Lake Champlain; the other, consisting of 1100 men, and commanded by Gen. Arnold, went up the Kennebec river, and crossed the wilderness to Quebec.

4. The soldiers, under the command of Arnold, suffered incredible hardships. For several days, they were almost en-

of Bunker Hill fought? Why were the Americans driven back? Why did the battle of Bunker Hill encourage the Americans? 13. Gen. Warren? Describe the picture.

1. Continental Congress? Washington? Militia? 2. What of the war? 3. General Schuyler? Gen. Arnold? 4. What of his ex-

tirely destitute of food, and many of them were nearly starved to death. Yet these privations were borne with fortitude, and the men at length reached Quebec.

5. An attack was finally made upon that place; but Gen. Arnold being wounded, and Gen. Montgomery killed, it failed of success. After many vicissitudes, the American troops were obliged to return, without having accomplished the objects of the two expeditions in which they had been engaged.

6. The spring of 1776 opened with favorable prospects for the Americans. Gen. Washington managed so well, that in March, Gen. Howe, with all the British troops, was forced to quit Boston. On the 17th, the fleet set sail for Halifax, and the American troops entered the town.

7. On the 4th of July of this year, Congress made a solemn declaration that the people of America would submit to the government of England no more, but that they would be a free and independent nation. This is called the Declaration of Independence. It was hailed by the inhabitants with the greatest joy, and the day is still celebrated every 4th of July. From this time each of the colonies became a State, and, joined together under the general government of Congress, they became a free nation under the name of the United States.

8. At this time, the hopes and the courage of the country were very high; but these were soon depressed by great misfortunes. In August, a powerful British army came in ships against New York. Washington was there with many troops; but after a great deal

of fighting, they were forced to quit the place, and give it up to the British. Several American forts were also taken, and the provincial army, now very much reduced, retreated to New Jersey.

9. The British officers thought the war nearly finished, and large numbers of the American people feared that the power of England was about to triumph over the liberties of the country. One event, however, revived a little their sinking courage. In December, Gen. Washington, being on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware with the American troops, suddenly crossed that



American Troops crossing the Delaware.

river to Trenton. At this place there were about 1000 soldiers, who came from Hesse in Germany, and were called Hessians. They had been hired by the British, and came to this country to fight for them against the Americans. Washington came suddenly upon them, and took 900 prisoners.

10. In January, 1777, Washington attacked some British troops at Princeton, killed 100 men, and took 300 prisoners. In this battle, James Monroe, who was afterwards President of the United States, was wounded.

pedition? 5. Attack on Quebec? Two expeditions against Canada? 6. Gen. Howe? 7. Fourth of July? What of the colonies? 8.

New York? Provincial army? 9. British officers? Describe the capture of the Hessians. Describe the picture. 10. What took place in Jan. 1777? James Monroe? Washington? The

Washington himself, whose bravery led him into the midst of the fight, was placed in great danger, but escaped unhurt. The British were so much astonished at these bold and sudden enterprises, that they retreated to New Brunswick, and left the American army to take up their winter-quarters quietly at Morristown.

11. In the spring of 1777, La Fayette, a young French nobleman, left his country, and came to assist the Americans. He became the bosom friend of Washington, and was appointed a general in the army. He fought bravely and successfully for our country; and now, while I am writing, he still lives in France, and is striving to secure for his native land the blessings of that liberty which he assisted our fathers to establish here.

12. In September of this year, Gen. Howe left New York with a strong British force in a great many ships. These entered Chesapeake Bay, and the troops proceeded toward Philadelphia. Washington met them at every point, and fought several battles. But the Americans were obliged to retreat, and the British entered Philadelphia on the 26th.

13. About the time that the events occurred that I have just related, others of great importance were taking place in the north. Gen. Burgoyne, a famous British officer, set out from Canada with one of the finest armies that was ever known, intending to proceed to New York across the country, by way of Lake Champlain. Gen. Gates assembled a considerable force to oppose him. The brave inhabitants left

their farms, and came in hundreds to assist him. Several skirmishes took place, and on the 16th of August a detachment, sent by Burgoyne to destroy some stores at Bennington, was defeated, as I have told you in the history of Vermont.

14. On the 18th of September, a fierce battle was fought at Stillwater, near Saratoga. On the 7th of October, another battle was fought. The greatest bravery was displayed on both sides, and night only terminated the conflict. Burgoyne retreated to the heights of Saratoga, and the Americans pursued. The situation of the British troops was now distressing. Many of their officers had been killed; they were surrounded by active enemies, and they had only food enough left for three days. Having no hope of escape, they were obliged to surrender, and on the 17th of October the whole army, consisting of six thousand men, laid down their arms. This was a great event, and amid many losses, and reverses, sustained the hopes of the American people.

CHAP. LV.

REVOLUTION.—CONTINUED.

1. The year 1778 opened with an event, which occasioned great joy in America. In February, the government of France acknowledged the independence of the colonies, and promised to send ships, troops, cannon, guns, and ammunition to assist them. The government of Great Britain, hearing of this, and being alarmed by the defeat and capture of their favorite general,

tember? Seventh of October? Burgoyne? British troops? Their surrender?

1. Government of France? Government of

British? 11. La Fayette? 12. Gen. Howe? Washington? When did the British enter Philadelphia? 13. Gen. Burgoyne? Gen. Gates? Battle of Bennington? 14. Eighteenth of Sep-

Burgoyne, and his army, determined, if possible, to make up the quarrel with America. Accordingly, they sent some men to Philadelphia, to arrange the business with Congress.

2. They offered to grant all that the Americans had claimed, to lay no more taxes, and to repeal all their unjust and offensive laws. But now that the people had suffered so much, Congress would not listen to these terms. The English agents, finding that they could not succeed in this way, attempted to bribe Joseph Reed, one of the members. They offered him a great deal of money, and a rich office, if he would bring about a reconciliation between the two countries.

3. But Mr Reed was an honest man: he loved his country, and would not sell his conscience for gold or power. He replied, to the unworthy offer:—'I am not worth purchasing; but, poor as I am, your king has not money enough to buy me.' Such noble conduct as this, was not uncommon among the true-hearted patriots of our glorious Revolution. The brave fighting, the daring courage, the bold enterprise of our soldiers, did not more contribute to the salvation of our country in that day of trial, than the steadfast truth and sincerity of our public men.

4. I must add one word more on this subject. My little readers should understand, that when they grow up, it will be the duty of many of them to assist in choosing officers to rule over the country. Now, let them remember that the country is safe only in the hands of honest men. Let them therefore never assist, directly or indirectly, in bringing any other than honest men

Great Britain? 2. What offer did the agents of the government make? Congress? Joseph Reed?
5. What took place in June, 1778? Washing-

into office. If they do so, they sell their country, and are not worthy of those blessings which our forefathers fought and bled to secure.

5. In June, that part of the British army which was in Philadelphia, left that city, and marched across the country to New York. Washington, with his troops, forsook his log huts in the woods, and pursued them. At Monmouth, a fierce battle was fought, of which I have told you in the history of New Jersey. The British had the worst of the battle, 500 of their men being killed and wounded. Sir Henry Clinton, the British commander, stole away with his troops by night, and escaped to New York.

6. In July, Count d'Estaing came with a large French fleet to assist the Americans; but he effected nothing, and at the close of the season, sailed for the West Indies.

7. I will now tell you about Wyoming. This was a beautiful little district in Pennsylvania, situated in what is the present county of Luzerne. Here were a few small villages, the people of which were almost wholly occupied in agriculture. They were surrounded with charming forests, and bright meadows, and green hills, and sparkling rivulets; all around was happiness, peace and plenty. But this lovely spot was destined to become the scene of cruelties scarcely equalled in the history of human warfare.

8. The British officers and soldiers had become very bitter in their feelings toward the Americans. The capture of Burgoyne had wounded their pride, and their general bad success irritated and exasperated them. Above all, the French, whom they hated most

ton? Battle of Monmouth? Sir Henry Clinton?
6. Count d'Estaing? 7. What of Wyoming?

cordially, had now taken part with the Americans. Acting under the influence of their embittered feelings, they conducted the war, in many instances, rather as if they were fighting with savages, than with civilized men.

9. The people of Wyoming had sent some of their men to fight against the British, and for this they were to be scourged. A band of 400 Indians, and about as many tories, were sent against them. The inhabitants heard of their danger, but too late for effectual defence. They however threw up some hasty breastworks, and gathered their families into them. The enemy at length appeared before one of the forts, and pretended that they wished to make peace. They invited the commander to come out, for this purpose; so he and the soldiers went to meet them at a place appointed in the woods; but when they reached the spot, not an Indian nor a tory was there: they pressed on through the dark paths of the forest, but found no one.

10. At last, they saw themselves surrounded by the enemy. The savages were in every bush. They sprung out upon them, uttering terrible yells. All but sixty of four hundred men, were murdered with the most horrible cruelty.

11. The enemy then went back to the fort, and, to frighten the people within, hurled over the gates the scalps of their husbands, brothers, and fathers. They now inquired of the leader of the tories, what terms he would give them. He answered only 'the hatchet:' they fought as long as possible, but the enemy soon enclosed the fort with dry wood, and then set it on fire. The unhappy people within were involved in

British officers and soldiers? How did they conduct the war? 9. Tell the story of Wyoming.

the flames, and they all perished, men, women and children, in the awful blaze.

12. The whole Wyoming country was now ravaged. The people were scalped; the harvests, houses, and orchards, were burned; even the tongues of the horses and cattle were cut out, and the poor creatures left to perish.

CHAP. LVI.

REVOLUTION.—CONCLUDED.

1. The year 1779 was distinguished by no remarkable occurrences. The English took Savannah, and repulsed the French and Americans, who attempted to recapture the city, with severe loss. Gen. Tryon went to Connecticut with several hundred men, plundered New Haven, and burnt the towns of Fairfield and Norwalk. In August, Gen. Sullivan marched against the Indians in the western part of the State of New York. These had taken part with the British, and had committed many acts of cruelty and violence upon the inhabitants of the country. The American troops went to chastise them for this conduct.

2. At this time, the whole country, from Utica westward, was inhabited only by savages. Yet Gen. Sullivan found that these had very comfortable houses, a great many peach and apple trees, and very fine fields of corn. But it was his duty to destroy them. He set the villages on fire, and laid the whole country waste. He then returned with his men to his quarters in Pennsylvania.

3. On the 12th of May, 1780, Charleston, in South Carolina, surren-

1. The year 1779? What occurred at Savannah? General Tryon? Gen. Sullivan? 2. Country west of Utica? What of the Indian

dered to the British, after a gallant defence by Gen. Lincoln. Several battles took place during the season in North and South Carolina, in most of which the Americans were defeated.

4 In July, Count Rochambeau, with six thousand French troops, arrived at Rhode Island, and marched across the country, to join Washington near New York. These troops were welcomed by the inhabitants with great joy. When they encamped at night, though most of them were weary, there were many of them still ready to spend an hour in amusement. Some green spot was selected, a violin was brought, and the village maidens joined gaily in the dance with the polite Frenchmen.



The French Camp at Night.

5. Washington had hoped, with the assistance of the French troops, to retake New York; but the British assembled so great a force there, that it was thought imprudent to undertake it. Thus the season passed, the Americans having gained nothing and lost much. The hopes of the country were indeed very much depressed: nor did it revive them to learn that one of their

generals had become a traitor to his country.

6. This was Benedict Arnold, the same man who led an army into Canada, in 1775. He was a very bold and intrepid man, but he was selfish and unprincipled. He held the command of a very important fort at West Point. He signified to the British his willingness to give up the fort, and Major Andre, a fine young officer was sent privately to make a bargain with him. It was agreed that Arnold should put the British in possession of the fort, and that they should give him 50,000 dollars and a general's command in the British army.

7. When all things were arranged, Andre secretly set out to return, but he was detected, and the whole plot was discovered. Arnold escaped to the British at New York, and his name has ever since been covered with infamy. Andre was tried as a spy, and hung on a gallows.

8. During the spring of 1781, a great many battles and skirmishes were fought in North and South Carolina. The British were commanded by Lord Cornwallis, and the Americans by Gen. Greene. The latter were frequently defeated, yet they were never discouraged, and the result of the whole campaign was highly advantageous to the American cause.

9. In the summer of 1781, Lord Cornwallis was stationed at Yorktown, in Virginia, with 10,000 British troops. Washington was near New York, making preparations to attack that city, where Sir Henry Clinton held the com-

houses, &c.? What did Gen. Sullivan do? 3. Charleston? North and South Carolina? 4. Count Rochambeau? Describe the picture. 5. Washington? Hopes of the country at the end of the year 1780? 6. Character of Arnold? How

did he propose to give up the fort at West Point? What of Andre? 7. What did Arnold do after the discovery of the plot? Fate of Andre? 8. The year 1781? The British? Americans? Result of the whole campaign? 9. Lord Corn-

mand. But his army being too small, he determined to march to the South, against Cornwallis. Accordingly, he set out with the army; and before Sir Henry Clinton suspected his design, he had already crossed the Delaware.

10. About this time, Arnold, the traitor, was sent with some British troops against New London. They took Fort Griswold by assault, and after the garrison had surrendered, murdered nearly the whole of them in cold blood. They then burnt New London to the ground, and returned to New York. But the period of British triumph was fast drawing to a close. Washington marched on, and was joined by a large number of French troops, who had just arrived in the Chesapeake, under Count de Grasse.

11. The combined army amounted to 16,000 men. Cornwallis was sheltered by strong fortifications, but the Americans and French drew near, planted their cannon, and on the 9th of October began to pour in their shot upon him. A tremendous cannonade was now kept up, night and day. The walls of the British fort were battered down, their cannon were silenced, and their men slaughtered by hundreds. Cornwallis attempted to escape, but did not succeed. At length, finding all resistance vain, he offered to capitulate, and on the 19th, the whole army surrendered.

12. This splendid victory, in effect, closed the war. The British government saw that America could not be conquered. Accordingly they abandoned the attempt, acknowledged the in-

wallis? Washington? What did Washington determine to do? 10. Arnold? Fort Griswold? Washington? How many American and French soldiers? Describe the attack on Cornwallis. What occurred on the 19th of

dependence of the United States, and, in 1783, a treaty of peace between the two nations was signed. The British troops now took their departure, and our country, thenceforward, assumed her station among the independent nations of the earth.

CHAP. LVII.

UNITED STATES AFTER THE REVOLUTION.

1. I have now told you of the Revolutionary War. It is scarcely possible for us to conceive of the sufferings of the country during this struggle of eight years. Thousands of people were killed; towns were burnt down; the lands lay uncultivated; many of the churches had ceased to be places of worship, and become barracks for soldiers. Hundreds of families had been broken up; thousands had been reduced from wealth to poverty; widows were mourning for their husbands who were slain; children were thrown upon the world without protection; and society, having lost its character for pure morality, was stained with profligacy and vice.

2. Beside all this, though our country had gained peace and independence, it was still without a regular government. Happily, we had wise and good men at this time, as well as brave ones during the war. These, seeing the necessities of the country, devised an excellent government, which went into operation in the year 1789, as I have told you. The rules and principles of this government are called the Consti-

October? 12. The British government? What took place in 1783? What of our country?

1. Sufferings of the Americans by the war? 2. What of our country? What did the wise

tution of the United States. Washington was chosen President by the people, and Congress assembled at Philadelphia, to make laws for the country. All things now began to go on well. The people returned to their habits of industry, and the meadows and wheat fields began to bloom once more. Poverty and mourning fled away, the ministers of the gospel returned to their churches, and peace and plenty were spread over the land.

3. After Washington had been President four years, the people chose him again, and he held the office four years longer. He then declined a re-election, and, retiring to his country-seat at Mount Vernon, spent the remainder of his days in attending to his farm. He died in 1799, as I have before told you. He was one of the greatest and best men that ever lived: his memory is cherished by the American people as that of a father, and venerated throughout the world. He not only saved his country by his bravery, skill, and prudence, but he has done, and will do more good to mankind by his example, than any other man that ever existed. Other generals, and other statesmen, by looking to him, will feel their selfishness rebuked, their ambition chastened, their patriotism warmed and elevated, and their good will to mankind expanded and strengthened. The holy influence which Washington's name and character will exert upon the world, is doubtless incalculable: while human society lasts, they will never cease to shed their blessings upon mankind.

4. I will endeavor to illustrate the influence of Washington's example.

men of our country do? What is the Constitution? Washington? Congress? What consequences followed the establishment of our government? 3. Washington? How did he spend the remainder

I have told you of La Fayette, who left ease and luxury at home, and came to help the Americans in their struggle for liberty. He became the intimate friend of Washington, and his noble heart was deeply imbued with the lofty and pure sentiments of that great man.

5. After our war was done, he returned to his own country. The spirit of liberty was soon after kindled in France. True to his principles, La Fayette stood forth as the friend of freedom, justice and humanity. But ambitious men arose, and a horrible scene of strife, bloodshed, and anarchy spread over the land. Then Bonaparte came. In his attempts to conquer the world, millions of human beings were slain.

6. During all this time, La Fayette was banished or in prison. But at length, Bonaparte was dead. The selfish and the bloodthirsty had perished, and their schemes had perished with them. Again the spirit of liberty visited France, and now again La Fayette appears as the friend of his country and mankind.

7. Though he is old, yet his heart is warm and true. Amidst the turmoil of angry passions, he is calm and steadfast. The example of Washington is ever before him. His countrymen have discovered his sincerity, and they have placed their destiny in his hands. At the age of near eighty years, he is the admiration of the world. Thus La Fayette, by studying the character of Washington, has become what he is; and other patriots, hereafter, will glory in following the example of La Fayette.

8. There is another point of view,

of his life after being President? Character of Washington? His memory? What of his example? 4. How does the life of Fayette illustrate the influence of Washington's example? 8.

in which it is delightful to think of Washington. He had many enemies, and during his life time, by intrigue and falsehood, they made many people believe that he was a bad man. But their voices are now hushed, and their names have passed into contempt; while his name, like the ascending sun, gathers additional brightness with the advance of time. This may teach us that virtue and vice have, ultimately, their reward. One brings disgrace, the other honorable fame. Mankind will, soon or late, pass a just sentence upon the actions of their fellow beings. Though an intriguer may flourish for a time, yet the stamp of ignominy will inevitably be impressed upon him. The falsehood, the selfishness, and the meanness, which he thinks to hide in his own breast forever, will, some time or other, be brought out. He cannot escape.

9. In 1797, John Adams, of Massachusetts, was chosen President. He was a member of the old Congress, who sat at Philadelphia during the war, and brought the country safely through that trying period. He was a man of great eloquence. His heart was full of patriotic feelings, and he had the art of uttering them with such force, as to awaken similar feelings in the breasts of others. He lifted his voice against the tyranny of Britain, and pleaded earnestly for the cause of liberty. In this way he produced great effect; and, in gratitude for these things, the people chose him President.

10. During his administration, the city of Washington became the seat of government. In 1800, Congress, which before had sat at Philadelphia, removed to this place, and have ever since held

their sessions there. It has now grown up to be quite a large city. It is situated in the district of Columbia, which is a tract of land ten miles square, and the people are under the government of Congress. It was ceded to the United States in 1790, and has now 39,870 inhabitants.

11. In 1801, Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, was elected President of the United States. He too was an ardent friend of liberty, and exerted himself during the Revolution to save the country. In 1803, he purchased Louisiana of the French for the United States, an immense tract of land, lying between the Mississippi and the Pacific Ocean. Of this I have told you in the history of Louisiana.

12. In 1805, Mr Jefferson was elected President a second time. In 1809, James Madison, of Virginia, was elected President. In 1812, our country declared war against Great Britain. The principal cause of this was, that the ships of that nation frequently met our vessels upon the sea, and their officers behaved in a very improper manner. They took the liberty to search our vessels, and if they found any English sailors on board, they took them forcibly away. Sometimes they mistook American for English sailors, and thus many of our countrymen were forced into the British navy, and there obliged to fight the battles of the English.

13. After the war was declared, the government of England sent a great many vessels with soldiers to fight against our country. In the history of Maryland, I have told you how they burnt the public buildings at Washington, and how the British were roughly

What lesson is taught us by the life of Washington? 9. John Adams? His character? 10. City of Washington? Congress? District of

Columbia? 11. Thomas Jefferson? Louisiana? 12. What took place in 1805? James Madison? What occurred in 1812? Occasion of the

handled at North Point. In the history of Louisiana, I have told you how they were slaughtered by the Americans under General Jackson. Many other battles and skirmishes took place, particularly along the boundary between Canada and the United States.

14. But the most interesting occurrences happened upon the sea. We had but a few ships of war, but these were commanded by Decatur, Hull, and other gallant officers. Occasionally they fell in with the British ships, and dreadful battles followed. The English seamen, like their soldiers, were brave and skilful. They had great renown, and being accustomed to beat all other ships, expected to beat ours also. But in this they were mistaken. In the very first encounter, the Americans beat the British, and brought one of their large ships in triumph to America. Several other ships, and two whole fleets on the lakes, were taken by the Americans.

15. I cannot tell you of all the gallant achievements that took place during the war. These things happened less than twenty years ago, and you will easily find some person who knows all about them, and who will

war? 13. Government of England? When was the battle at North Point fought? When was Washington taken and burnt by the British? When was the battle of New Orleans fought? What of our navy? English seamen? First naval battle? 16. Madison? James Monroe? Tour of Monroe? In 1821? John Quincy Adams? General Jackson?

Note. The pupil should now review his previous studies in this work. I would suggest that he be required to answer the following questions:—

What was the first settlement in the United States? When was Virginia first settled? By whom? What was the object of the settlers? What are some of the principal events that occurred in Virginia, previous to the French war?

take pleasure in telling you the whole story. You must ask particularly about Commodore Macdonough, who captured a great number of vessels on Lake Champlain, and about Commodore Perry, who took as many more on Lake Erie. You must ask about the brave Captain Lawrence, who was killed, and his ship, the Chesapeake, taken by the British.

16. In 1813, Madison was elected a second time, and in 1817, James Monroe, of Virginia, became President. He made a tour through the United States, and everywhere the people paid him the greatest respect. He was elected a second time, in 1821; and in 1825, John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, was chosen to succeed him. He was President for four years, and then Gen. Jackson became President.

17. I must not forget to tell you of La Fayette's visit to this country in 1825. I suppose many of my little readers saw him. He was welcomed by all the people, for they remembered how he came in his youth and fought for the country. He went back in a short time to France, and although a very old man, he is yet living.

Note. Let similar questions be put in respect to each of the States, and each of the Territories. They will need to be varied according to circumstances. Now let the pupil tell the boundaries, principal rivers, and capital, with the distance and direction of the same from Washington, population and extent of each of the States. When did Philip's war begin? What are some of the events that occurred during this war? When did king William's war begin? Queen Anne's? King George's? The old French war? The Revolutionary war? The late war with England? When was the battle of Lexington fought? When were Cornwallis and his army captured? When was the Declaration of Independence made? When was the battle at New Orleans fought? When was John Adams first made President? Washington? Jefferson? Madison? Monroe? J. Q. Adams Jackson?

CHAP. LVIII.

BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN NORTH AMERICA.

1. The British possessions comprise all that part of North America lying north of the United States, with the exception of the Russian possessions on the northwest, and Greenland on the northeast. It is a vast extent of country, but all the northern portion is cold, barren, and uninhabited, except by scattered tribes of Indians. The settled portions of the country are divided into four provinces:—Upper Canada, Lower Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia. Beside these, the islands of Newfoundland, St John's, and Cape Breton, are occupied by English settlers.

2. Quebec, the capital of Lower Canada, is a large city, containing twenty thousand inhabitants. Montreal, situated on an island in the St Lawrence, is a large town in Upper Canada, and has 24,000 inhabitants. Fredericktown is the capital of New Brunswick, and Halifax of Nova Scotia.

3. We must take a trip to these British settlements, for there are many remarkable things to be seen there. We shall find steam-boats on Lake Ontario and Lake Erie, which will carry us across those great waters. If we visit the upper lakes, Huron and Supe-

Questions on the Map of the United States and Map of North America.—Tell the direction of the following places from Washington: Quebec, Montreal, Fredericktown, Halifax, Newfoundland, Island of Cape Breton. Describe the river St Lawrence. What five great lakes between Canada and the United States? Where are the following lakes? Winnipeg, Athabescaw, Slave, Wallastan, Great Bear, Deer. Where is Hudson's Bay? Baffin's Bay? Where are the Russian possessions?

rior, we must go in boats. Along the shores of these great inland seas we shall find no white inhabitants, unless we meet with parties, who are going to hunt wild animals, or trade with the Indians. When we are upon Lake Superior, we shall be astonished at its magnitude. We may form some idea of it by considering that its extent is about five times as great as the whole State of Massachusetts.

4. At Montreal, we can go on board a fine large steam-boat, and proceed down the St Lawrence to Quebec. We shall greatly admire this majestic river. It is spotted with thousands of beautiful green islands, and along the banks, there are multitudes of pleasant little villages.

5. Quebec will strike us with astonishment. A part of the town is built upon a vast rock, so high as to overlook the whole country to a great distance. If we ascend one of the steeples of the city, we shall have one of the most splendid prospects in the world. We shall see the country around, decorated with towns and villages: we shall see many little streams pouring their waters into the St Lawrence; and we shall see that king of rivers rolling its broad waves down to the sea.

6. If we visit the islands of Newfoundland we shall see the people engaged in the cod-fisheries; at Halifax, we shall see a great many English ships of war; and in New Brunswick, we shall find some of the inhabitants occupied in building ships; some in cutting down lumber, and others in carrying it

1. What do the British possessions comprise? The northern portion? The settled portions? 2. Quebec? Montreal? Fredericktown? Halifax? 3. Steam-boats? Huron and Superior? Extent of Lake Superior? 4. St Lawrence? 5. Quebec? 6. Newfoundland? Halifax?

away; and others still we shall see engaged in catching herring, salmon, and other fish, at the mouths of the rivers.

7. We must take care, that our journey through these countries is performed in the summer; for in the winter it is extremely cold there, and the snow is sometimes so deep, as almost to bury up the houses of the inhabitants. When the people go out in winter, they are obliged to wrap up their noses and fingers in fur, to prevent their being frozen.

8. We shall find in the Canadas that a great many of the inhabitants are French, and talk no other than the French language. We shall often meet with churches built in a singular fashion, and if we make inquiry, we shall learn, that these French inhabitants are almost all Catholics.

9. We shall also see many Scotch and English people, and in all the large towns we shall find a great many soldiers. These soldiers are sent by the government of England, to keep the people in a state of obedience. In our country, the government belongs to the people, and they therefore do not need any soldiers, except to drive away foreign enemies. But in these British possessions, the government belongs chiefly to the king; and kings always govern by means of soldiers.

10. I will now tell you something of the history of these British possessions. The coasts were discovered by

New Brunswick? 7. Winter in the British Provinces? 8. Inhabitants? Churches? Religion of the French inhabitants? 9. Scotch and English? Soldiers? Why are there so many soldiers in Canada? Government of Canada? 10. What of S. Cabot? About what time did the French settlements in Newfoundland begin? 11. Principal objects of the settlers? When was Quebec founded? Montreal? 12. Nova Scotia? Halifax? New Brunswick?

Sebastian Cabot, a celebrated navigator, in 1497. After this, the French used to visit the island of Newfoundland, for the purpose of fishing along the shores. About the year 1600, they began to make settlements there, and soon after, at various places along the banks of the St Lawrence.

11. The principal object of the settlers were the fisheries, and the fur trade with the Indians. In 1608, Quebec was founded, and Montreal not long after. The settlements increased, and gradually extended along the St Lawrence, and the Lakes, to Detroit.

12. Nova Scotia was not originally settled by the French, but by the English. The first establishment was made at Halifax, in 1749. New Brunswick was a part of Nova Scotia till 1784, when it was separated, and became a distinct province.

13. In the history of the United States, I have told you of the most interesting events in the history of the Canadas. England and France have been engaged in war with each other, during a great part of the last two centuries. Whenever a war broke out between them, it extended of course to their colonies. In America the French and English colonies lay side by side, and therefore became scenes of bloodshed and violence. I have told you of King William's war, which began in 1690; Queen Anne's war, which began in 1702; King George's war, which be-

13. England and France? French and English colonies in America? When did King William's war begin? Give an account of some event that happened during this war. See chapter 18. When did Queen Ann's war begin? Relate some event that happened during the war. When did King George's war begin? Give an account of some event that took place during this war. When did the Old French war begin? Give an account of some of the principal events of this war. 14.

gan in 1744, and the Old French war, which began in 1755.

14. During these various struggles, the inhabitants on both sides were exposed to the most bitter sufferings. The Indians were called in to assist, and thus to the ordinary evils of war were added the brutality and violence of the savages. It is not necessary to repeat these painful stories. My readers will remember those which have been related, and will also recollect, that in 1663, all the Canadian possessions of the French came into the hands of the English. During the revolutionary war, the Americans made several attempts to take the Canadas, but without success. Since that time, they have continued to flourish. Many persons have emigrated to the country from Scotland and Ireland, and some from the United States. The people are generally happy, and contented, and are very much attached to their king.

CHAP. LIX.

THE ESQUIMAUX.

1. If you will look on the Map of North America, you will see a vast tract of country, lying between Labrador and Baffin's Bay on the east, and the Russian possessions on the west.

Why did the wars between the French and English colonies occasion the inhabitants great suffering? Give an account of some of the attempts of the Americans to take Canada. What American General was killed at Quebec? What other American officer was wounded there?

Questions on the Map of North America.—

Where is the coast of Labrador? Where is Hudson's Bay? Where are Davis' Straits? Where are the following Islands? Melville, Sabine, Bathurst, Cornwallis, N. Devon, James, Raleigh, Barren, N. Hampton, S. Hampton. Where

Nothing can be more dreary, than the aspect of these remote regions. The climate is so severe, that few plants can flourish. The trees are small and stunted, and nothing is presented to the eye but barren plains and desolate hills.

2. These regions are inhabited by a singular race of people, called Esquimaux. They are very short, not being taller than a white man's shoulder. They have black eyes, a tawny skin, and black hair hanging down upon their shoulders.



Winter Village of the Esquimaux.

3. In summer, they live in huts, made of sticks set upright in the ground, and covered with skins. In winter, they build huts of snow, using pieces of ice for their windows, instead of glass. They live chiefly along the sea shore, and subsist by fishing. They

are the following lakes? Great Bear L., Slave, Athapescow, Deer, Winnipeg, Wollaston. Describe the following rivers: Athapescow, Mackenzie's, Chinchill, Nelson, Severn, Saskatchewan. Where are the following bays? Repulse Bay, James', Baffin's. Where are the Russian possessions?

1. What of the tract of country between Baffin's Bay and the Russian possessions? Climate? 2. People? Describe the Esquimaux. Describe the picture. 3. What of the Esquimaux in summer? In winter? How do they live?

catch seals, walruses, and whales. They are very filthy in their habits, and seem to relish their food best when it is nearly putrid. They have a breed of very active dogs, which they train to the harness. Five or six of these, when attached to a sledge, will draw as many men sixty miles in a day, over the snow. They are exceedingly ravenous, and when a bird is given to one of them, he will swallow it down, feathers and all. The young ones have such good appetites, that they would kill themselves with eating if they could get food enough. Some people suppose these dogs to be tame wolves. During the summer they are employed in hunting bears, seals, and reindeer.

4. This latter animal is very common in all these northern regions of America. The people do not use them as in Lapland, for drawing sledges and carrying burdens. They live in a wild state, and subsist in the winter by browsing the shrubs, and upon moss which they dig from beneath the snow. They are hunted by the people, and furnish them with a considerable portion of their food.

5. These people have no king and no regular government. They live in small detached villages, and frequently remove from one place to another. They are evidently a distinct race from the other savages of America, but closely resemble the inhabitants of Lapland in Europe. When these people first came to America, or from whence they came, it is impossible to tell. They have no books, possess no history of their race, and remain in the same condition as when the country was first discovered.

Habits? Dogs? What do they hunt in summer?
4. Reindeer? 5. Government of the Esquimaux?
How do they live? What of the Esquimaux race? History?

CHAP. LX.

GREENLAND.

1. Let us now suppose that we enter a ship at New London or Nantucket, and go on a whaling voyage to the northern seas. We will set out in May, and in four or five weeks, shall reach Baffin's Bay. But although it is now summer, we shall find ourselves surrounded by vast islands of ice, floating in the water. We must be very careful, for if the ship should strike upon one of these, she will go to pieces, and we shall all be drowned.

2. We shall soon meet with whales, and see them spouting up columns of water into the air. Some of the men will go in a boat, and carefully approach one of these monsters. A sailor will then take a harpoon in his hand, with a long rope fastened to it, and plunge it swiftly into the body of the whale. When he feels the wound, he will plunge deep into the water, drawing the rope after him. By and by he will come up to breathe, and the water that he spouts forth will be tinged with blood. Again he descends into the sea; but at length, he is dead, and floats on the surface. Then he is taken along side the ship, and the sailors cut off the blubber, or fat. This is made into oil, which is used for lamps.

3. After we have taken a great many whales, and filled our ships with oil and whalebone, we will return to our homes. But we must not come back without visiting Greenland. This

Questions on the Map of North America.—Where is Greenland? Cape Farewell? Where are the following towns? Upernavick, Umanak, Holsteinborg, Suckerstoppen.

1. What of Baffin's Bay in summer? 2. Whales? Manner of harpooning a whale?

is even more dreary than the country of the Esquimaux. As we approach the shores, we shall probably see some white bears, feeding upon the carcasses of the whales that have drifted to the land. Some of these bears are very large, and weigh nearly as much as an ox.

4. We shall find the Greenlanders, like the Esquimaux, very short, with dark skins, black eyes, and long black hair. Their dress is made of seal skins, and they subsist almost entirely upon seals which they catch in the water. The men go upon the rough waves, and take these creatures amid masses of ice. They show amazing courage and skill in this dangerous pursuit.

5. In summer, the Greenlanders live near the sea, and dwell in tents made of skins. In winter, they remove to a little distance, and spend their time in repairing their canoes and fishing tackle. Their houses at this season are made of wood, and covered with skins. The people are far from being neat, and everything is imbued with a strong smell of rancid fish: the sailors who go there, are made sick with the disagreeable odor of their tents and houses.

6. Although Greenland is destitute of trees, and incapable of cultivation, yet the people are very much attached to their country. They have nothing but bleak and barren hills and valleys, and distant mountains covered with everlasting ice; yet they cannot imagine that any part of the world is so delightful as that which they inhabit.

7. Greenland was formerly supposed

What is done after the whale is dead? 3. What of Greenland? White bears? 4. Greenlanders? How do they subsist? Catching seals? 5. The people in summer? In winter? Houses? 6. What of Greenland? What do the people think of their country? 7. What is Greenland

ed to be a part of the American continent, but it is now believed to be a great island. Some late English navigators have ascended Baffin's Bay, and found the sea to extend as far west as Melville Island. These men suffered a great deal from cold and fatigue, and were often in danger of losing their lives by the floating islands of ice.

8. They saw a great many white bears and reindeer, and herds of a very singular animal, called musk ox. This creature has long hair, short legs, and flat crooked horns. It feeds upon grass, moss, and the branches of trees. It is about as large as a small cow, yet it is very nimble, and climbs the rocks like a goat.



The Musk Ox.

9. From the discoveries of these voyagers, Parry, Franklin, and others, it is probable that the ocean extends quite across from Baffin's Bay to Bhering's Straits, and that Greenland is therefore entirely separated from the continent. The northern part of it is always covered with snow and ice, and still farther north, there is a vast region, which is never visited by summer, and

supposed to be? English navigators? How far west does the sea extend? Sufferings and danger of the navigators? 8. What animals did they see? Describe the Musk Ox. Describe the picture. 9. What is probable? What of the northern part of Greenland? 10. What of Green-

where no human being has ever ventured to go. In that dreary land there is perpetual winter. No trees grow there, no plants put forth their green leaves, no flowers blossom. All around it is still, cold, and desolate.

10. Greenland has been longer known to Europeans, than any other part of America, except Iceland. More than eight hundred years ago, some white people went from Iceland, and settled on the eastern coast. They found the country inhabited by the same race of short swarthy seal-catchers who inhabit Greenland now. A few years after, a good many people went from Norway, and joined the settlers, and in 1023 they all became subject to Denmark.

11. In 1350, a dreadful pestilence, called the Black Death, prevailed in Europe, and extended its ravages to Iceland and Greenland. This not only destroyed the lives of many of the people, but the plants perished, and the whole land was left blasted and desolate. About a hundred years after this, vast masses of ice accumulated along the eastern shore of Greenland, and ships from Europe could never afterwards visit these settlements.

12. Thus cut off from all intercourse with the rest of the world, the whole colony perished. In 1721, some people from Denmark went to Greenland and settled there. From year to year, other settlers came, and, intermarrying with the natives, established a permanent colony there. They are still subject to Denmark, and the whole number of the people is supposed to be 20,000.

land? What took place more than 800 years ago? What did the settlers find? What took place a few years after? What in 1023? 11. What happened in 1350? What took place about 100 years after? What took place in 1721? Other settlers? To whom is Greenland subject? Population?

CHAP. LXI.

ICELAND.

1. I will now tell you of Iceland. This is a large island, upon the eastern coast of Greenland, and but little more than one hundred miles distant from it. In extent, it is nearly equal to the State of New York. It is covered with mountains, and is a wild, desolate region, yet the inhabitants have a proverb which says, that 'Iceland is the best land on which the sun shines.' These people came originally from Norway, and are a pious, contented and happy race. They are very intelligent, and, being deprived of almost all intercourse with the rest of mankind, they spend a great part of their leisure in reading, telling stories, and reciting poetry to each other.

2. In February, these people flock to the southern and western shores of the island, and spend three months in fishing. At this time, their dresses are made of skins. Their food is butter and fish, which they eat early in the morning and late at night, the day being spent at sea. Nine or ten men go in a boat, and fearlessly venture out to a great distance upon the water. The fish they catch are principally cod.

3. When the snow leaves the ground, they return to their villages, and the men collect trees for fuel, and to cover the roofs of their houses. The young cattle are then driven to the mountains, and the women take care of the cows and the dairy. About the middle of

1. Where is Iceland? Extent? What of Iceland? Proverb? People? 2. What of the people in February? Dress? Food? Men? Fish? 3. What do the people do in spring? The men? The women? What do the women

summer, they repair to the rocky hills, to collect moss, which the people cook and eat.

4. About the middle of July, the inhabitants gather in their hay, the women often mowing the grass, as well as the men. In winter, the men are occupied in making implements of iron and copper, in preparing leather for shoes, and in making ropes and other things. The women busy themselves in spinning, and in taking care of household matters. The people are all industrious, and are therefore more comfortable in their cold and barren country, than the lazy inhabitants of some warm and fruitful climates. The population of Iceland is about 50,000. The people are subject to Denmark, and carry on some trade with that country.

5. But I have not told you the most remarkable things about Iceland. There is a tall mountain there, called Hecla. This is a volcano, and often sends forth smoke, fire, red hot stones, melted lava, and clouds of ashes. But there are other volcanic mountains there, and one of them is called Skaptar Yokul. I will describe an eruption of this volcano, which took place in 1783.

6. In May, a light blue smoke or fog was seen floating along the surface of the earth; but the inhabitants were not alarmed till June, when several shocks of an earthquake gave warning of what was to follow. These continued to increase in violence, till one evening, a black cloud of smoke arose in the north, and extended itself over a whole district. On its near approach, this district was involved in darkness, and when the cloud hovered directly

over it, a shower of sand and ashes was discharged, which covered the ground an inch deep. Earthquakes, with incessant peals of thunder, and frightful noises under ground, continued the whole day. The next day, several fire spouts were seen in the north, while the thunder and the commotions of the earth increased in violence.

7. The Skaptar was formerly a large river, and took its rise in Skaptar Yokul. On this day, it totally disappeared, and was so dried up, that men crossed its bed on foot, where the passage had been difficult in boats. The cause of this was apparent a few days afterwards: a terrific stream of lava had come pouring down, and filled the channel of the river. The cliffs, between which the Skaptar ran, were 500 feet in height; yet the lava not only filled up this immense chasm, but overflowed a considerable tract on both sides. It is now only in a few places, that the tops of the highest hills, between which the river flowed, can be seen above the lava that was poured from the volcano.

8. No language can describe the horrors of this awful eruption. A black cloud incessantly showered down sand, ashes, sulphur, and other substances. The fetid smoke covered the face of the sun; and when it did appear, its color was a bloody red. Constant earthquakes threatened the foundations of the island; innumerable fire spouts burst from the mountains; strange sounds and constant thunder filled the air, and muttered in the bowels of the earth, and one incessant sheet of lightning played over the island.

do in summer? 4. July? Winter occupations? Industry? Population? To whom are the people subject? Trade? 5. Hecla? Skaptar Yo-

kul? Describe the eruption of 1783. *Note.* The pupil may either commit this passage to memory, or the teacher may put such questions as he

The frightened inhabitants were in the greatest distress, and believed that the fearful day of judgment had come.

9. A stream of lava now proceeded from the mountain, bearing houses, enclosures, and everything else before it. The rocks were torn in pieces with a dreadful noise; villages and churches were overwhelmed, cultivated lands were buried, and rivers dried up. Hundreds of cattle and sheep were destroyed; multitudes of birds were frightened away and never returned; and large tracts of fertile land were forever laid waste.

10. Such was the dreadful eruption of Skaptar Yokul in 1783. Hecla and other mountains have had frequent eruptions, but none so frightful as this.

11. But I have not told you all the wonders of Iceland. There are hot springs there called Geysers. There are many of them in different parts of the island. The Great Geyser sends forth a constant stream of boiling water, and sometimes it throws columns eighty feet into the air.

12. I must not omit to tell you of the Aurora Borealis, or northern lights. These are often seen at night by the people, and are far more brilliant than any ever witnessed by us in the United States. Strange images of light are often seen dancing in the sky, and sometimes the whole heavens seem sheeted with silver.

13. These are some of the wonders of nature in Iceland. They are calculated to fill our minds with awe, and inspire us with lofty ideas of that Almighty Being, who can make one lit-

tle island the scene of such wonderful works. I must now tell you something more about the history of Iceland.

14. It was first discovered by a famous Norwegian pirate, about the year 860. In the year 874, it was first settled by two Norwegians; and in 928, the people established a republican government. In 1261, king Haco, of Norway, subjugated the island, but the people retained their ancient laws. Iceland at length became subject to the Danish government, and the people are now ruled by a governor, appointed by the King of Denmark.

CHAP. LXII.

MEXICO.

1. I have now given you some account of the cold and barren regions of America, which lie far to the north. There winter reigns for eight or nine months in the year, and the summer is so brief, that only a few stunted shrubs and some hardy plants are produced by the soil. My little reader will now accompany me to a warm climate, and a more fruitful land.

2. Let us suppose that we enter a ship at New York, and sail to the south,

Questions on the Map of Mexico.—Boundaries? What chain of mountains runs through the country? Direction of this chain? Where is the Gulf of Mexico? Of California? Where is the Peninsula of California? Describe the following rivers: Rio del Norte, Rio Colorado, Rio Hiaqui, Sabine, St Felipe, Timpanogos, Buenaventura. Where are the following Lakes? Guadalaxara, Zacatula, Chapala, and Salt. Where is the city of Mexico? Its direction from New York? Philadelphia? Washington? Describe the following towns: Vera Cruz, Chiapa, Conception, Buenaventura, S. Carlos de Monterey, St Domingo, St Miguel, Zacatecas, Sinaloa Sar-ta Fe, S. L. Potosi.

thinks proper. 11. What of the Geysers? Great Geyser? 12. Aurora Borealis? 14. First discovery of Iceland? First settlement? What took place in 928? In 1261? Government?

along the eastern coast of the United States. After passing between Florida and Cuba, we shall enter the Gulf of Mexico, and after a voyage of about five weeks, shall reach Vera Cruz in Mexico. As we made our passage to Greenland in summer, lest it should be too cold, we must go to Mexico in winter, or we shall find it too hot.

3. We shall see nothing very interesting at Vera Cruz; so we will set out immediately for the city of Mexico. We shall find no stages in this country, and the roads being very bad, we must ride upon mules. We must not go alone, for fear of robbers, who sometimes attack travellers here. In our journey we shall ascend several mountains, and, after having travelled about 200 miles in a westerly direction, we shall reach Mexico, one of the most renowned cities in America.

4. We shall find it situated on a vast plain, spreading to the north for many hundred miles, and elevated six or seven thousand feet above the level of the sea. It occupies a delightful valley, surrounded by mountains, whose tops are ever covered with snow, and some of which occasionally send forth volumes of fire and smoke.

5. We shall be delighted with the city of Mexico at first; for in many respects, it is one of the most charming places in the world. Being so high, it is visited at all seasons of the year with fresh breezes, like those of spring. The gardens are full of delicious fruits and fragrant flowers. There are groves of lemon and orange trees; melons of every kind abound; and the whole face of nature is covered with the most lux-

uriant vegetation. The forests are thronged with birds of bright plumage; the hills are adorned with wild flowers of surpassing beauty; and the very air is filled with fragrance, which comes from the meadows and groves.

6. Many of the buildings in Mexico are lofty and spacious, and being built of stone, have a magnificent appearance. There are many splendid palaces, surrounded with fountains, fragrant groves, and beautiful gardens. We shall observe that the people have a sallow complexion, with black hair and black eyes. We shall notice a great many Roman Catholic priests, many of whom receive a great deal of money, and spend much of their time in gambling.

7. In the city is a large church, called the Cathedral. On entering this



Cathedral in the City of Mexico

church, you will be amazed at the splendor of its interior. The altar is surrounded by a railing of solid silver; and there is a lamp of the same metal, so large that three men get into it, when it is to be cleaned. It is enriched with lion's heads, and other ornaments of pure gold. There are many statues

2. How can you go from New York to Vera Cruz? Why should we go to Mexico in winter? 3. Stages? Roads? How must we travel? Robbers? Mountains? Distance of Mexico from

Vera Cruz? 4. Situation of the city of Mexico? 5. Climate? Gardens? Groves? Melons? Vegetation? Forests? Hills? Air? 6. Buildings? People? Priests? 7. Cathedral? De-

of saints made of silver, and ornamented with precious stones. Such is the pomp of a Catholic Church; but who would exchange the humble little meeting houses of our own country, for these gorgeous edifices? Who would exchange our simple religion, for the hollow ceremonies that may be witnessed in a Mexican Cathedral?

8. The country of Mexico is divided into fifteen provinces, resembling our separate States. They are united under a general government, and have a national constitution, similar to ours. But there are frequent disturbances in the country, and everything seems to be in rather an unsettled state. The people have been for several years at war among themselves, and many lives have been lost in these unhappy broils.

9. Before we leave Mexico, we should, if possible, go and see the silver mines. These are among the richest in the world, and yield several millions of dollars every year. As they lie among the mountains at a considerable distance, we must again hire some mules, and obtain a guide. As we proceed on our journey, we shall meet with a great many of the native Indians,



Indians and white Man of Mexico.

scribe the picture. 8. Divisions of Mexico? Government? State of the country? 9. Silver mines? How must we travel to the mines? In-

who bear a strong resemblance to the savages of our country. Most of them are partly civilized, and some of them live in villages, quietly pursuing the various occupations of life.

10. When we reach the mines, we shall perhaps hardly have the courage to go into them. They are vast pits dug in the earth, some of them having a depth of more than a thousand feet. In these deep and dark caverns, the miners are constantly occupied in digging the ore, which is taken from the mines, and the pure silver separated from the dross.

11. The present population of Mexico is about 8,000,000. The city of Mexico has 137,000 inhabitants, and Puebla 70,000. There are other large towns in the country. In the northeastern part, is the town of Santa Fe. It is about 1100 miles from the city of Mexico, in a northerly direction. It is situated in one of the finest regions in North America.

12. If any of my little readers are tired of the sea, they may return to the United States by way of Santa Fe. They must travel on mules, or on foot, from the city of Mexico, have trusty guides, and be well armed. They will sometimes proceed, for days together, over vast plains, and then they will climb steep mountains, and pass through dark and dismal valleys. They will often meet with Indians, some of them living in villages, and some roving through the wilderness. They will occasionally see cougars, and fierce animals, called jaguars. They will also meet with many wild animals, and

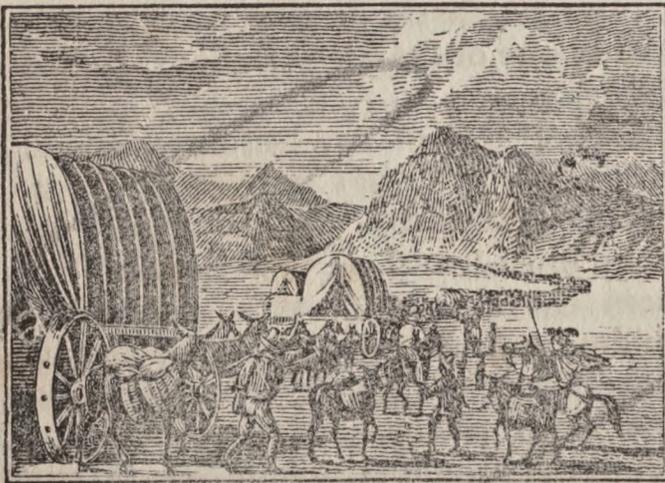
dians? Describe the picture. 10. Describe the mines. 11. Population of M.? Population of the city of M.? Puebla? Santa Fe? 12. Describe a journey from the city of M. to Santa Fe. What will be met with on the way? Peo-

CHAP. LXIII.

MEXICO.—CONTINUED

strange birds, and towns filled with people; some of whom are white, some black, and some red. After meeting with many adventures, my little friends will reach Santa Fe.

13. It is very probable that the first man they meet there will be a person from Connecticut, or Massachusetts, who has come to this distant place to sell tin ware, clocks, calicoes, gingham, and other 'notions.' They will find in the town a good many traders from the United States, who come loaded with goods, and go back loaded with Mexican dollars. These cross the country from Arkansas to Santa Fe; and for greater security, they travel in large companies called caravans. With one of these, our travellers can go to Arkansas, ascend the Mississippi in a steam boat, take the stage at Pittsburg, and return to New York.



Santa Fe Traders crossing the Desert.

14. Those of my little readers, who are not homesick, will stay with me a little longer in Mexico; and after I have told them its history, we shall pay a visit to some other countries. Having done this, we will return to the United States.

ple? 13. Who will the travellers probably first meet at Santa Fe? Caravans? How may the travellers return to New York? Describe the picture.

1. I have told you that Mexico is a vast country, containing 8,000,000 of inhabitants. Some of these are nearly white, like the people of the United States, and are descended from Spanish emigrants, who settled in the country many years ago. There are many negroes also, who are slaves brought originally from Africa. A large part of the population are Indians, whose fathers once possessed the country, as the Indians possessed the land in the United States, before the Europeans came, and took it from them.

2. I know of no history more interesting than that of Mexico. I have not room to tell the whole story, but I will relate a part of it. A little more than three hundred years ago, Mexico was inhabited only by Indians. But they were not savages, living in the woods, and subsisting upon wild beasts, as those I have told you of in the history of our own country. On the contrary, they had large towns, splendid buildings, and an established government.

3. The king resided at the city of Mexico, then called Tenuchtitlan. It was a magnificent city, filled with temples, towers, and palaces. It surpassed everything else in richness and grandeur that then existed in America. It was in the year 1518, that the Spaniards first heard of this great kingdom. Expecting to get a great deal of gold and silver, they determined to send some men to conquer it. Accordingly,

1. Describe the inhabitants of Mexico. 2. What of Mexico more than three hundred years ago? The inhabitants? State of the country? 3. The king? Tenuchtitlan? What happen-

six hundred soldiers, commanded by Fernando Cortez, set out for Mexico. They were well supplied with guns, swords, pistols, and horses. They went in eleven small vessels, and soon reached the coast of Mexico.

4. They entered the mouth of a river, but the Indians came in multitudes to the shore, to oppose their landing. Cortez tried to make peace with them, but they refused to listen, and hurled a shower of stones and arrows upon the fleet. The vessels were soon ranged in a circle, and the cannon being loaded, they were discharged among the crowd. The Indians were utterly astonished at the thunder and the smoke, and frightened by the havoc, which the cannon made among the people. They therefore ran away, and shut themselves up in a fortified town, called Tabasco.

5. Cortez landed his men, and proceeded to the town. This was surrounded with stakes, and the Indians defended it as well as they could. But they were soon overcome, and, flying to the forests, the Spaniards entered the place in triumph. But the next day, Cortez was informed that about 40,000 natives were coming against him. He therefore left the town, placed his men in a good situation, and waited for the attack.

6. At length they came, seeming almost as countless as the trees of the forest. The greater part of them were quite naked. Some were armed with bows and arrows; some with spears; some with clubs; some with wooden swords; and others with slings, by means of which they could hurl large

stones with great force. They had martial music, produced by flutes made of reeds, and by large shells, and drums formed of the trunks of trees.

7. On they came, the little band of Spaniards waiting for them in silence. With a terrible cry, the Indians rushed upon them. Then the cannon opened their mouths, and poured their deadly shot upon the multitude. Many of them were slain; but the Indians bravely stood their ground, and showered upon the Spaniards such a cloud of arrows as to darken the air. The ranks of the latter were at length broken, and they were on the point of being defeated.

8. At this critical moment, Cortez, who was stationed in the woods near by, sallied out upon the Indians with a small troop of horse. Now, the Indians had never seen a horse before, and believing each trooper with his horse to be some horrible monster, they were struck with superstitious dread, and turning from the fight, ran away like a flock of sheep. Eight hundred of their number lay dead on the field of battle, while the Spaniards lost only two men.

9. Cortez had taken some prisoners, but he treated them kindly, and dismissed them, having given them some presents. They went away very much pleased, and told their countrymen what had passed. The Indians now dismissed their fears, and some of them brought the Spaniards provisions. After this, the chief sent to Cortez requesting peace, and a treaty was accordingly entered into, between him and the Spanish leader.

What did Cortez and his troops do? What hap-

pened the next day? 6. Describe the Indian army. 7. The battle? 8. What did the Indians think of the horsemen? By what means did Cortez gain the victory? Loss of the Indians?

10. Then the chief came with some of his principal men to see Cortez, who received them graciously. While they were talking together, one of the horses neighed. The Mexicans were in great fear, and asked what those terrible people with long necks and long tails, would have. Cortez told them they were angry, because the Mexicans had fought the Spaniards. They then ran, and got some quilts for the horses to lie upon, and some chickens for them to eat, and promised to behave better in future.

11. After this, Cortez entered his vessels and sailed to a place nearer the city of Mexico. Here he landed his troops, and the people, not being suspicious, cheerfully assisted him. By and by, some of the Mexican warriors paid him a visit. They were magnificently dressed, and gave the Spaniards a high idea of the riches of the country. After a while, messengers came from Montezuma, the king, inquiring why Cortez and his soldiers came.

12. Cortez replied, that he could only deliver his answer to the king himself, and requested permission to go to his capital. The king would not consent to this, but he sent to Cortez some very magnificent presents. Among these were bracelets, necklaces, and other trinkets, wrought in solid gold, with the utmost skill and elegance; boxes filled with precious stones, pearls, and gold dust; and two large orbs, one of massy gold, representing the sun; and the other of silver, representing the moon.

13. Cortez received the presents, but still insisted upon going to see the

king. But another messenger came from Montezuma, forbidding him to come. Cortez treated him in a haughty manner, and he was offended; he therefore, with all the Mexican people, immediately left the Spaniards. Cortez was astonished at this, but after a while, he was invited with his men to go and see a Cacique or Chief, who lived at no great distance. Accordingly they set out, and after marching a few days, came in sight of the town where the Cacique lived. At first the soldiers thought the walls of the city were made of silver, for they had a white and shining appearance. But when they came near them, it appeared that they were only plastered with lime.

14. At length the Spaniards entered the town, and were graciously received by the Cacique. But what was their surprise to find him so fat and bulky, that he could neither stand up, nor walk alone. They could hardly help laughing aloud in his presence. They soon discovered, however, that he was a very intelligent man. He treated them kindly, and the people of the town supplied them abundantly with all sorts of delicious fruits.

CHAP. LXIV.

MEXICO.—CONTINUED.

1. Cortez now found, that several powerful Caciques hated Montezuma, and were anxious to throw off his yoke. Accordingly he encouraged them to rebel, and promised to assist them. At

messenger? A Cacique? Walls of the city? 14. What of the Cacique? How were the Spaniards received?

1. What did Cortez now find? Did he encourage the Caciques to rebel? What did he so-

9. Prisoners? Treaty? 10. What followed? The Indians and the horses? 11. What did Cortez next do? Mexican warriors? Messengers from the king? 12. Presents? Another

the same time, he secretly sent word to Montezuma, professing to be his friend, and declaring his intentions to be devoted to his interests. Thus, false and treacherous to both parties, he pursued his own selfish schemes. His determination was to dethrone the king, overturn the government, and become master of the empire. With this view, he began to found a Spanish colony at Vera Cruz, the place at which you will recollect we landed, in our imaginary voyage to Mexico.

2. But Montezuma was still afraid of Cortez; and therefore he sent two of his princes to him, with presents of immense value, and a message, begging him to depart from the country. To this, the Spanish leader replied, that he had been commanded by his king to march to the capital, and deliver to the emperor himself a message of the utmost importance; and that no danger whatever could deter him, or his men, from executing this high commission. The princes, struck with admiration of the bold character of Cortez, returned to Montezuma, and gave an account of what they had seen.

3. About this time, some of the Spanish soldiers had become weary of their toils, and foreseeing the dangers to which they would be exposed, determined to seize the ships, and return to Cuba. Cortez discovered the plot, and by his artful management, diverted the men from their purpose. He was very eloquent, and he addressed the soldiers, setting before them in glowing colors his splendid schemes, and the immense wealth they would all realize, should they be successful. Excited by this

cretly do at the same time? Why was Cortez false to both parties? What was his determination? Spanish colony? Montezuma? Reply of Cortez? The

speech, the soldiers ran to the vessels, and destroyed them; thus putting it out of their power to leave the country. This was exactly what Cortez desired, for he knew that the soldiers, having no means of retreat, would fight desperately.

4. Cortez now set out with his troops, accompanied by six hundred Indian allies, for the purpose of proceeding to Tenuchtitlan. After having marched two or three days, they reached the Cordilleras. Here was a district lying among the mountains, called Tlascalala. It was inhabited by a nation of brave Indians, who had thrown off the authority of Montezuma, and lived in independence. Cortez sent messengers to make peace with them, but the bold mountaineers would not make peace. They gathered their warriors together, and six thousand of them went against the Spaniards. A dreadful battle followed, but the Indians were defeated. Three more battles were fought; thousands of the Indians were killed; and finally, the Tlascalans sued for peace.

5. Peace was accordingly made, and Cortez being invited to the city of Tlascalala, the capital, went there with his army. The people received them joyfully. The streets were thronged with men, women, and children, who rent the air with shouts and acclamations, intermingled with the noise of drums, fifes, and other instruments. Young girls strewed the path with flowers, and the priests walked before the soldiers with burning incense. At length the Spaniards, whom the people called Gods, were conducted to a large building, where everything was provided for their comfort and pleasure.

vessels? 4. What did Cortez now do? Tlascalala? What took place between Cortez and the Tlascalans? 5. How were the Spaniards re-

6. After a little while, Cortez set out, with six thousand Tlascalan warriors, to pursue his march toward the capital of Mexico. He was soon met by messengers from Montezuma, requesting him to come by the way of Cholula. Accordingly the army marched to that city. But it was soon discovered, that a plot had been formed to destroy Cortez and his army; the chiefs of Cholula were therefore seized, and the town given up to plunder. For two whole days the six hundred Spanish soldiers, and the six thousand Tlascalans went through the city, slaughtering men, women, and children. Tears and cries obtained no mercy. The houses and streets were everywhere stained with blood; and finally a large temple, to which hundreds of the people had fled for safety, was set on fire, and all the miserable people in it were consumed. Such was the awful vengeance of Cortez toward his enemies!

7. Strange as it may seem, Cortez had the address to make friends of the people of Cholula who had escaped the massacre. They became his allies, and he marched on toward Tenuchtitlan. After proceeding several days, he reached a large city called Tezcuco. The Cacique received him kindly, and everywhere the people manifested a desire to be released from the harsh government of Montezuma. Leaving this place, the army proceeded, and after crossing some mountains, a beautiful valley of great extent was presented to their view. In the midst was a vast lake, resembling a sea, and villages, cities, and hamlets seemed to rise out of its very bosom.

ceived at the city of Tlascala? 6. What did Cortez do after a while? Messengers from Montezuma? What took place at Cholula? 7. Tezcuco? Describe the first view of the valley

8. Among these, Tenuchtitlan the capital, could be distinguished by the prodigious number of its temples, and towers. When the Spaniards first looked upon this scene, they could scarcely believe their senses. The fertile valley encircled by mountains, whose tops were covered with snow; the rich groves of fruit trees; the blue lake, and the cities glittering with gold and silver, seemed more like a beautiful dream than a reality.

9. At length, the army descended into the valley, approached the lake, and, crossing one of the bridges, were about to enter the town. Here they were met by about a thousand people of distinction, dressed in mantles of cotton cloth, with bunches of feathers in their heads. They advanced in silence, each saluting Cortez as they passed, with the most profound respect. Then came two hundred of the king's attendants, richly dressed, and finally, Montezuma himself appeared, in a car of gold, borne on the shoulders of four men. Some other men held a canopy of green feathers over him, and three chiefs, bearing golden wands, walked at the head of the company. When these raised their wands, the people covered their faces, as if they were not worthy of beholding the august person of their king.

10. Cortez and the king now approached each other, the ground being covered with carpets, so that Montezuma's feet might not be soiled by touching the earth. They met and saluted each other with profound respect. Montezuma was about forty years old, and was dressed in a fine cotton robe, profusely ornamented with gold and sil-

where Tenuchtitlan stood. What did the army do? Describe the scene on their entrance into the city. Montezuma? Meeting of the king and Cortez? Age and dress of the king? 11. The

ver. On his head, he wore a crown of gold.

11. After some ceremonies, the king entered the city and the army followed. The city consisted of about 20,000 houses, with many magnificent temples and palaces, far surpassing in grandeur anything that was supposed to exist in America. A large palace was assigned to Cortez and his troops, and they were abundantly furnished with all the provision they wanted. Here Montezuma visited Cortez, and treated him in a most gracious manner.

CHAP. LXV.

MEXICO.—CONTINUED.

1. I must now tell my readers that the Mexicans knew nothing of the Bible, and had never heard of Jesus Christ. They had many absurd notions of religion, and paid their worship to a multitude of idols. They erected splendid temples in honor of these gods, and entertained for them the most profound reverence. Multitudes of priests attended the temples, and sacrificed thousands of human beings to their deities. These consisted chiefly of prisoners taken in war. The lives of their captives were generally preserved, that their blood might be shed by the priests in honor of the gods.

2. Now Cortez was a Catholic, and these things shocked him very much. He could make war upon a defenceless people, slay them by thousands, plot the destruction of their government, and pursue his schemes by falsehood,

city? What place was assigned to Cortez and his troops?

1. The Mexicans? Their religion? Priests? Sacrifices? 2. Cortez? What was consistent with the religion of Cortez? What appeared ab-

treachery, and violence. All these things were consistent with his notions of religion, but the sacrifice of human victims to idols, appeared to him very wicked and absurd. It may seem to us very strange, that the Mexicans could imagine the horrid practices of their religion were right, but it is still more strange, that Cortez could believe his conduct was agreeable to the peaceful doctrines of Christianity. We can only account for it on the supposition, that he had never read the scriptures, and knew nothing of the religion he professed, but its rites and ceremonies.

3. Montezuma supposed that the strangers would be very much gratified to see the Mexican temples. So he went with them, showed them the idols, and explained everything. After Cortez had seen it all, he told the king, that the Mexican religion was false and wicked. He also told him something about the Christian religion. Montezuma was very much shocked, and he told Cortez, that he must not speak irreverently of the Mexican Gods.

4. The king was evidently angry, and he began secretly to take measures for killing the Spaniards. But nothing escaped the vigilance of Cortez. He quickly discovered the plot, and resorted to a very bold measure for defeating it. He went, with about thirty of his bravest men, to the palace of the king. They were admitted, and received by Montezuma with apparent friendship. After some conversation, Cortez told the king he must go with him to his quarters. The monarch was enraged, but Cortez was firm, and finding it in

surd to him? What seems strange? What is more strange? Conduct and feelings of Cortez? 3. What did Montezuma do? What did Cortez tell Montezuma? What of Montezuma? 4. What did he secretly do? What did Cortez discover? Tell how

vain to resist, the king yielded, and was carried a prisoner to the palace which the Spanish soldiers occupied.

5. Thus the sovereign of this vast empire was placed in the power of the bold and artful Cortez. The latter now began to take measures to humble the spirit of Montezuma, by assuming a haughty air; and in one instance he went so far as to put chains upon him. At length the subdued captive summoned his chiefs, and while the tears flowed from his eyes, acknowledged himself a vassal of the king of Spain, and promised to pay him a vast sum of money every year.

6. Cortez now became very arrogant, and resolved to destroy the images in the Mexican temples. He therefore went to one of them for this purpose, but he found the priests and the people determined to resist what they deemed a very impious design. Cortez perceived that it would be imprudent to proceed farther, and gave up his intention.

7. He was now called to encounter new and unexpected difficulties. Montezuma had messengers in all parts of the kingdom, who immediately came, and informed him if anything remarkable happened. One day, some of these arrived from the coast, with pictures of eighteen European vessels, that had just come there. Cortez soon learnt, that the governor of Cuba, having become jealous of him, had sent a thousand men in these ships, to make him a prisoner, or kill him.

8. Cortez did not hesitate as to what he should do; he left a hundred and fifty men at the city of Tenuchtitlan,

Montezuma was taken prisoner? 5. How did Cortez treat the king? What did Montezuma do? 6. What did Cortez resolve to do? What did he do? 7. Montezuma's messengers? 8. What

to preserve order, and set out with about two hundred and fifty to meet the Spaniards, who were commanded by Narvaez. He attacked them by night, and after a desperate struggle, obtained a complete victory. Narvaez was wounded, and he, with 800 of his men, fell into the hands of Cortez.

9. He now proposed to the prisoners to become his soldiers; and to this they agreed. Thus an event which seemed to threaten his destruction, resulted in adding 800 Spanish soldiers to his little army.

10. But now messengers came in haste from the capital, and informed Cortez that the inhabitants had risen, and made an attack upon the soldiers he had left; and that if he did not hasten back, they would all be slain. He therefore lost no time, but marched with the greatest expedition, and at length reentered the city. He immediately took possession of his former quarters, where he found Montezuma still remaining in the care of his troops. They had been fiercely assaulted by the people, who were now greatly excited against the Spaniards.

11. A few days after this, 400 of the soldiers were surrounded in the streets, and a violent attack was made upon them by thousands of the inhabitants. Stones were hurled from the roofs of the houses, and innumerable arrows and javelins filled the air like a storm of hail. The Spaniards hewed their way through crowds of the enemy, and regained their quarters, leaving heaps of the slain Indians in the streets.

did Cortez soon learn? What did he do? Narvaez and his troops? 9. How was the army of Cortez increased? 10. What news now came from Mexico? What of Cortez's return? What did he find? 11. What happened a few days

12. But the spirit of vengeance was now thoroughly roused in the bosom of the Mexicans, and heedless of the dreadful slaughter made by the cannon and muskets, they gathered in immense numbers, and came like a rolling torrent against the castle of the enemy. Cortez and his troops, who were never unprepared, received the shock with the utmost firmness. They had planted their cannon in such a manner, that at every discharge many of the natives were cut down. But they were not intimidated.

13. They rushed to the very gates of the castle, and climbed on each others shoulders, in the attempt to scale the walls. They came up to the very mouths of the cannon, and points of the muskets. As the foremost were shot down, others filled their places. The air rang with their terrible shouts, and the thunder of the cannon was drowned by the uproar of their drums, fifes, and horns.

14. Thus, for a whole day, the assault continued. At night, the Mexicans withdrew, for their religion did not allow them to continue the battle after sun down. But the next morning the fight was renewed, and throughout the whole day, it did not cease for a moment. Thus for several days the siege continued, during which thousands of the Mexicans were killed, and one third part of the city laid in ruins.

15. At length, Montezuma, who was still with Cortez, appeared upon the walls, dressed in a robe sparkling with jewels. When the people saw him, they were all silent, and bowed to the earth in the deepest reverence.

Then Montezuma spoke to them. He told them the Spaniards were his friends, and begged them to throw down their arms, and go home in peace. The people heard this with indignation. At first a gentle murmur was heard among the multitude like a breeze sweeping over a forest. But it grew deeper and louder, and at length, the angry shout of the people burst forth like a rushing tempest. Then a thousand arrows flew from the bow-strings of the Mexicans, and the wounded monarch fell senseless to the ground.

16. He was now taken into the castle, and by and by his senses returned. But oppressed with shame and indignation, he grew frantic; tore open his wounds, upbraided Cortez for his perfidy, rejected with scorn and loathing the attempts that were made to convert him to the Catholic religion, and at length found a release from his sufferings in death.

17. When the Mexicans saw their monarch fall, they were struck with amazement, and fearing the immediate vengeance of Heaven, abandoned the siege, and returned home. But after his death, a new king was elected, and the attack renewed. On the top of the high temple which overlooked the Spanish castle, they collected a great many stones and beams, to hurl down upon their enemies. Cortez went to this temple, with some of his bravest men, to drive away the Mexicans.

18. An awful struggle followed. The two parties met in the upper part of the building, and the Mexicans, consisting of chiefs and men of rank, fought like tigers. They would not fly nor

after? 12. Mexicans? Cortez and his troops? Describe the attack of the Mexicans. 14. What happened at night? The next morning? The siege? 15. Montezuma? The people? What

did Montezuma say? What effect had this speech on the Mexicans? What did they do? 16. Montezuma? 17. The Mexicans? Did they elect a new king? What of a high temple? 18.

surrender; preferring death to submission, some of them leaped from the lofty pinnacle of the temple to the earth, and were crushed in the fall. Two noble youths approached Cortez, and seizing him, dragged him to the edge of the pinnacle. Then holding fast to his limbs, they leaped over the railing, intending to drag him after them. But Cortez was a strong man, and knowing his great danger, held fast to the railing, while the two Mexicans, forced to quit their hold, swung from the pinnacle, and were dashed in pieces upon the earth below.

19. Cortez now returned to his quarters, and finding it dangerous for him to remain in the city, secretly determined to retreat. In a dark and rainy night he set out with his army, hoping to escape unperceived. They were crossing the lake, when being on a narrow part of the causeway, they were suddenly attacked by thousands of the Mexicans, who covered the water with their boats. A dreadful scene followed; fighting in the thick darkness, they could not distinguish friends from foes. Multitudes of the Indians were slain, and forming a bridge of their bodies, Cortez and a part of his army escaped to the shore. But two hundred of the Spanish troops were killed, with two thousand of their Tlascalan allies. Some prisoners and all the cannon and baggage fell into the hands of the Mexicans.

20. This dreadful event is still remembered in Mexico, and the night, on which it occurred, is called the 'night

of desolation.' Cortez and his little band now retreated to the city of Tlascala, cutting their way with desperate bravery through the thousands of enemies that opposed them. Here they remained some time, when having received a reinforcement of several hundred Spanish soldiers, Cortez marched back to Tezcucoc, resolved if possible to take the capital. With immense labor, timber was brought from a distance; several vessels were built, and launched on the lake; and the siege began.

CHAP. LXVI.

MEXICO.—CONCLUDED.

1. I must now tell my reader, that Quetlevaca, the brother of Montezuma, who had been made king at his death, was not now living. He died of the small pox, which the Spaniards brought into the country, and Guatimozin, a young man of high courage, was now king in his stead. He had put the city in the best state of defence; although the Spaniards attacked it bravely, they were, day after day, and week after week, repulsed by the Mexicans.

2. Weary of the protracted siege, Cortez and his troops one day made a fierce assault, and with incredible valor, burst into the city, cutting down those who opposed them, and trampling the dead and dying beneath their feet, they rushed on to the centre of the city. But there they were opposed with such bravery, that after a while, they gave

Describe the struggle in the temple. How did Cortez narrowly escape death? 19. What did he secretly determine upon? What happened as the Spaniards were retreating from the city? How many Spaniards were killed? How many Tlascallans? Prisoners and baggage? 20. What is

the night, on which this event occurred, still called? What did Cortez now do? What did he do after staying awhile at Tlascala? Vessels?

1. Guatimozin? What had he done? Spaniards? 2. What did Cortez and his troops one day do? What of their being driven back?

way, and were driven back. Cortez himself was seized by three Mexicans, who were dragging him away, when two of his officers came to his relief. These were both killed in the struggle which followed, but Cortez escaped.

3. At length, night came, and the Spaniards, being unable to retreat across the lake, were obliged to stay in the city. In the night, the great temple was lighted up, and by the glare they could see their companions, who had been taken prisoners, sacrificed to the God of War. They could see them obliged to dance before the hideous Idol, and could hear their screams, when the torture was inflicted upon them.

4. The next day, Cortez left the city, and soon being reinforced by more than 100,000 Indians, he made an attack at three points. After the most obstinate fighting and great slaughter, the town was captured, and Guatimozin himself, in an attempt to escape, was taken, and carried a prisoner to Cortez. He besought the Spaniards to treat his wife and children with kindness, but for himself he betrayed neither fear nor anxiety. With an air of dignity, he addressed Cortez, and said, 'I have done what I could to save my country, but my efforts have been unsuccessful. I have now no desire to live; for my life is worthless to me and my people. I pray you to take that weapon by your side, plunge it in my breast, and release me from an existence that is now a burthen.'

5. At this speech, the wife of Guatimozin burst into an agony of tears, and Cortez, who was very much affected by

the scene, retired, that the unhappy captives might indulge their grief without restraint.

6. The Mexicans, now that their king was taken, made no further resistance. Not only the capital, but the whole country fell into the hands of the conquerors. But the soldiers of Cortez did not find a great deal of gold and silver in the city; and being greatly disappointed, they became very angry. They suspected that Guatimozin had caused his treasures to be concealed, and therefore required of Cortez, that he and his first minister should be tortured, in order to make them tell where they had secreted their gold, silver, and precious stones.

7. Cortez consented, and Guatimozin and his minister were stretched on live coals, by the infernal Spaniards. Unable longer to endure his dreadful agony, the minister uttered a shriek, and turned his eye upon Guatimozin, as if asking permission to disclose the secret desired by the Spaniards. To this the king replied calmly, 'Am I on a bed of roses?' This rebuke silenced the minister, and he said no more, patiently enduring his anguish till he was released by death. Finding that the resolution of Guatimozin could not be shaken by torture, the Spaniards ceased from their cruel endeavours.

8. Cortez now sent his officers to various parts of the kingdom, and the inhabitants throughout the country were soon forced to submit. The empire was divided into provinces, and placed under Spanish governors. These being destitute of humanity,

What happened to Cortez? 3. What took place during the night? 4. What did Cortez do the next day? How was he reinforced? What did he next do? Guatimozin? 6. Mexicans after the capture of their king? What of Mexico,

with its capital? Spanish soldiers? 7. Did Cortez consent to the torture of Guatimozin and his minister? Describe the torture. 8. What did Cortez do? How was the empire divided and governed? Character and conduct of the

conducted with a degree of cruelty too shocking to relate. The blood of the poor Mexicans flowed like water, to satisfy the avarice of their invaders. Hundreds of them were burnt alive, and wives and children were often compelled to witness the burning of their husbands and fathers at the stake. There is not on the record of human actions, a page of history more blotted with crime, than that which relates the conduct of Cortez and his generals, after the conquest of Mexico.

9. Cortez was soon appointed governor of Mexico, which was called New Spain. He began to rebuild the capital, which now received the appellation of Mexico. But his enemies sent home to Spain unfavorable reports of his conduct; he therefore went back to his native country, where he was received by the king with great respect. But he was deprived of his government, and from this time fortune seemed to desert him. He went again to America, and made some discoveries on the western coast. Finally he returned to Spain, where, being treated with total neglect, he died in obscurity, at the age of sixtytwo.

10. Such was the fate of Cortez, one of the most extraordinary men the world has ever produced. The story of his deeds seems like a romantic dream. We cannot fail to admire his talents; but his cruelty, injustice, and treachery entitle him to everlasting infamy.

Spanish governors? What cruelties were practised upon the Indians? History of Cortez and his generals? 9. To what office was Cortez appointed? What did he do? What has since been the name of Tenuchtitlan? Enemies of Cortez? His return to Spain? How was he received by the king? What discoveries did Cortez make? At what age, and in what condition did he die? 10. History of Cortez? His

11. I have but little more to tell you of Mexico. From this time, it continued to be a dependency of Spain. The government was arbitrary and oppressive. The Indians, of which there were many millions when the country was conquered, rapidly diminished, and in the course of time, became the mere slaves and tools of the Spaniards, who settled in the country.

12. Thus centuries passed by, till at length the oppression of the Spanish government became intolerable. In 1808, the people rebelled, and after a struggle of twelve years, they gained their independence. In 1823, their present constitution was formed, and although there have been many disturbances, yet the government appears to be gradually acquiring stability.

CHAP. LXVII.

GUATIMALA.

1. Guatemala occupies the most southern point of North America. It is a narrow isthmus, connecting the two parts of the continent, and varies from two to five hundred miles in width. A great chain of mountains passes through this country from north to south; many

talents? His cruelty, injustice, &c. 11. What of Mexico after its conquest? Indians? 12. What took place in 1808? What did the people gain after twelve years? What took place in 1823? Government?

Questions on the Map of Guatemala.—Boundaries? What mountains run through Guatemala? Where is the Bay of Honduras? Describe the river St Juan. Lake Leon. Nicaragua. Where is the city of Guatemala? Its direction from the city of Mexico? New Orleans? New York? Cuba? Trinidad? Where is Truxillo? Vera Paz? Leon? London? Extent? *Ans.* 330,000 square miles. Population? *Ans.* About 2,000,000.

of the peaks are volcanic, and have their tops always covered with snow. Near twenty of these volcanoes are in constant activity.

2. If we travel in Guatemala, we shall find the weather excessively hot, at all seasons of the year, in the low countries. But if we go to the interior, we shall find some high plains and valleys, where the air is cool and delightful. The country is very much like Mexico, but even more fruitful. It produces corn, cochineal, honey, wax, cotton, the sugar-cane, indigo, maize, pimento, and chocolate in abundance, besides all kinds of fruit. The farming districts produce cattle and sheep. The mines yield but little gold and silver, and the inhabitants are therefore more industrious in cultivating the land, than in the neighboring countries. The people consist of the descendants of Spanish settlers, negroes, native Indians, and mixed races.

3. If we go into the low country, near the Bay of Honduras, we shall see a good many people cutting down mahogany and logwood trees, which are sawed into boards, and brought to New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and other places.

4. The city of Guatemala is situated on the western side of the country, close to the Pacific Ocean. It is nearly half as large as Boston, and has a great many splendid edifices. Some of the churches are decorated in the interior with immense quantities of gold and silver. The catholic priests have great influence here, as well as in Mexico. There are several other large towns in this country.

5. Guatemala is divided into provinces like Mexico, and has a similar government. It is called the Central Republic of America. The people followed the example of Mexico, and freed themselves from the Spanish yoke about the same time. In 1821, they declared themselves independent, and afterwards formed their present constitution of government. Guatemala was originally inhabited by tribes of Indians, who were conquered, and the country taken possession of by the Spaniards, soon after the conquest of Mexico.

6. The city of Guatemala was founded in the year 1524, and gradually rose to be a rich and beautiful place. The Spanish governor resided there, and many wealthy families lived there in very splendid houses. But it was built on the slope of a mountain whose top was a volcano. In the year 1751, a dreadful earthquake shook down many of the houses, and the volcano sent forth a torrent of lava, which rolled down upon the town. In this way, a great part of the city was destroyed; but the people rebuilt it, and again it was a flourishing and beautiful place.

7. In the year 1775, it was again agitated by the shocks of an earthquake. The houses trembled, and some of them were thrown down. The steeples of the churches tottered, and fell prostrate to the ground. The earth and air were filled with terrible noises, and the inhabitants ran through the streets in despair. For five days and five nights, this awful scene continued. Some of the people escaped from the city, but there were still thousands remaining behind. Suddenly the earth opened, forming a deep and horrid chasm, from

1. Guatemala? Mountains? 2. Climate? Country? People? 3. Mahogany and logwood? 4. City of Guatemala? Catholic priests? Other towns? 5. Divisions? Government? Ti-

tle? What occurred in 1821? Original inhabitants? Conquest? 6. City of Guatemala? Where was it built? What occurred in 1671?

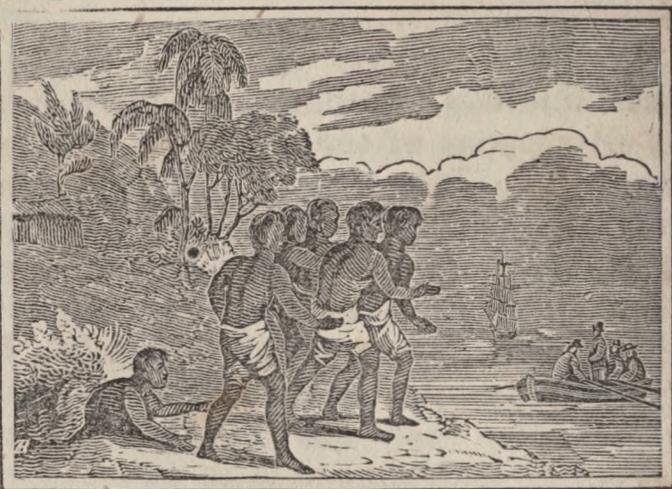
which issued the noise of roaring waters, and agitated rocks. The earth was violently shaken, and the whole city, houses, churches, and inhabitants, were plunged into the abyss. Then the earth closed up, and covered them all from the view. Thus the city was totally destroyed. The people who escaped, removed to the distance of about twentyfive miles, and there built the present town of Guatemala.

8. The country of Guatemala remained subject to Spain, from its conquest to about the year 1810, when the inhabitants began to rebel. In about ten years, the country became independent, as I have told you. The people obtained their freedom without much fighting, and are in a more quiet state than those of Mexico.

9. I must not omit to tell you of the Mosquito Indians, who inhabit the mountains on the coast south of Truxillo. These are totally unlike the other natives; they are, indeed, exceedingly like negroes. Their history is very curious and interesting. Two or three hundred years ago, a ship full of slaves was coming from Africa to some part of South America. They were cruelly treated, and finally rose upon their oppressors, killing the captain, and all the sailors.

10. But they were now in a terrible situation, for they did not know how to manage the ship. But Providence seems to have taken care of them; for the wind blew them to the shore, and they landed in safety. Here they lived, and at length were numerous and powerful. They spread over the mountains, and although the Spaniards tried to subdue them, they have to this day main-

tained their independence. The English carry on some trade with these people.



Mosquito Indians.

CHAP. LXVIII.

COLOMBIA.

1. I must now ask my reader to accompany me to South America; a vast country attached to the continent by the narrow isthmus of Panama. The first division we shall meet with, is Colombia, which occupies the north-western part. It is nearly half as extensive as the United States.

2. In our travels, we shall find many wonderful things in Colombia. Along the coast, the country is low, and there

Indians? Tell their history. 10. Describe the picture. Trade?

Questions on the Map of South America.— Boundaries? How do the Andes cross Colombia? Where are the Itiababa mountains? Where is Chimborazo? Cotapaxi? Where is Lake Maracaybo? Where is the bay of Panama? Describe the Orinoco R., Amazon, Potomac, Japura, Napo, Caqueta, Negro. Capital? Direction of Santa Fe de Bogota from Mexico? Washington? New Orleans? Cuba? Describe the following towns: Popayan, Quito, Carracas, Cumana, St Martha, Guayaquil, Carthagena, Panama.

1. South America? Colombia? Extent?

In 1775? Describe the earthquake. 8. Guatemala? What took place in 1810? When did the people gain their freedom? 9. Mosquito

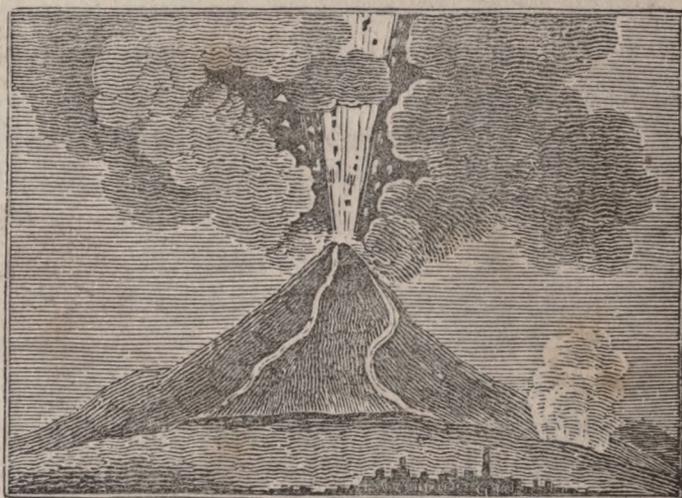
we shall find it always hot. There is never any snow or winter there; at all times the trees are covered with leaves, blossoms and fruit. But we must not stay in these hot regions, for the climate is very unhealthy to strangers. We must proceed as soon as possible to Santa Fe, or Quito, which are situated at an elevation of 8, or 9000 feet above the level of the sea. At these places, the air is always cool and refreshing. There is neither winter nor summer here; the climate the whole year round resembles that of New England, in the month of May.

3. When we are at Quito, we shall be near some of the loftiest peaks of the Andes. These rise above the clouds, and their tops are always covered with a mantle of snow. Here winter reigns from year to year; no leaves, no flowers, no living thing is seen on these cold and desolate peaks. Thus you perceive that in Colombia, there are three distinct climates; one of perpetual summer in the low countries; one of constant spring in the elevated plains; and one of everlasting winter upon the dizzy tops of the mountains.

4. The mountains of the Andes, while we travel among them, will fill our minds with wonder. Sometimes we shall descend into deep and dark valleys, where our ears will be stunned with the roar of falling waters. Sometimes we shall travel on the brink of precipices, and wind along the edges of cliffs, with vast rocks hanging above our heads, and fearful chasms yawning beneath our feet. We must ride upon mules in these wild countries, and we may be sure these trusty creatures will carry us safely on our journey.

2. Low countries? Santa Fe and Quito? Climate? 3. Peaks of the Andes? Three climates of Colombia? The Andes? Mules? 5. Chim-

5. Chimborazo is the loftiest peak of the Andes, and is more than four miles high. Humboldt, a famous traveller, went nearly to the top of it a few years ago. He ascended to the height of 19,300 feet, which is higher than anybody else has ever been. Cotopaxi is a terrible volcano. If an explosion happens while we are in the country, it will afford us a splendid sight. Nothing can be more truly sublime than the eruptions of this mountain. Its roarings are heard at the distance of 600 miles, and a column of fire rises from the crater to the height of 3000 feet.



View of Cotopaxi during an Eruption.

6. While we are among the mountains, we should visit a little village on the side of Antisani, a volcanic mountain, not far from Cotopaxi. This village is 13,500 feet above the level of the sea, and is the highest inhabited spot on the globe. Here the people live in quietness, and seem not to fear the volcano, which is close to them.

7. After leaving the mountains, we must visit the plains. These plains lie on the eastern part of Colombia, and resemble the prairies of our western countries. They are covered with coarse grass, and spread out to an im-

borazo? Humboldt? Cotopaxi? Describe the picture. 6. Antisani? 7. Plains? The

mense extent. They are called *Pampas*, which is the Spanish name for plains. We shall see them inhabited by vast herds of wild cattle.

8. Among the mountains in Colombia, there are very rich mines of gold, silver, platina, and emeralds. The inhabitants of the country resemble those of Mexico, but they appear to be more industrious and happy. The whole population of the country is about 3,000,000.

CHAP. LXIX.

COLOMBIA.—CONTINUED.

1. I will now tell you the history of Colombia. While the Spaniards were employed in conquering Mexico, they heard of a great Indian empire in South America, called Peru. Accordingly Pizarro set out, in the year 1531, to conquer that country. While he was engaged in this great enterprise, he sent some generals to subdue the Indians at the north. They consisted chiefly of small tribes living in a savage state, and offered little resistance to the Spanish arms.

2. But there were two or three nations which had made some advances in civilization, and which were formidable from their numbers and warlike character. The chief of these were called Moscas, and inhabited the country in the vicinity of Santa Fe: their capital was built where that city now stands. The king was both priest, and monarch, and the people had such a reverence for him, that whenever he went abroad they strewed flowers in his path, and turned their eyes away, lest

they should commit sin by looking upon him.

3. When the Spanish general, Gonzala de Ximenes, came to this country, in 1536, the reigning king was called Bogota. He was a famous chief, and he drew out his men to fight with the Spaniards. A great battle was fought, but the Indians were defeated, and the Spaniards were soon able to get possession of the country, on both sides of the mountains.

4. This whole region thus fell into their hands, and was erected into a province, under the name of New Grenada. It occupied nearly all the Territory within the present limits of Colombia, excepting the province of Venezuela. It was rapidly settled by Spaniards, who married Indian women, and devoted themselves to the cultivation of the soil. For 250 years, the people lived in peace, no war having taken place during this long period.

5. The coast of Venezuela was discovered by Columbus, in 1498. Some other Spanish navigators followed him, and on their return, gave very favorable accounts of the country. This led a good many people from Spain to come and settle there. They came under the direction of priests, who exerted themselves to convert the Indians, but without success. The settlements did not flourish, and it was thought best to subdue the Indians by force. Some troops were sent against them, and after a great deal of bloodshed, the savages were partly subdued.

6. About this time, the king of Spain sold the country to some Ger-

Pampas? 8. Mines? Inhabitants? Population?

1. Peru? Pizarro? His generals? Indians? 2. Moscas? Capital? King? 3.

Ximenes? Bogota? Conquest of the country? 4. New Grenada? Settlement? State of the country for 250 years? 5. What occurred in 1498? Other navigators? Settlement of the country? Priests? How were the Indians sub-

mans, who oppressed the inhabitants in the most grievous manner. In 1550, the province came again under the Spanish government, and thus it continued in a quiet state till the year 1806. At that time, the people made a gallant attempt under General Miranda, to throw off the Spanish yoke; but he and his troops were defeated; many were taken prisoners, and several were executed for rebellion.

7. But about the year 1810, Buonaparte had made war upon Spain, and Madrid, the capital, was actually in possession of the French. The whole country was thrown into confusion, and the American colonies, finding themselves neglected, thought it necessary to take care of themselves. The inhabitants of Venezuela, then called Caraccas, declared themselves independent, in 1811; and the first Congress assembled under the new Constitution, in 1812.

8. In New Grenada many of the people were in favor of independence, while others adhered to the government of Spain. These two parties became very much excited, and dreadful conflicts ensued. The Catholic priests joined the royal cause, and many of them became soldiers and officers in the army. The most dreadful outrages were committed upon the inhabitants, under the sanction of these priests. In 1812, one fifth of the inhabitants of Quito were murdered by troops, who were commanded by a Catholic bishop.

9. The country was now overrun by the royalist forces, and the efforts of the inhabitants to oppose them, prov-

ed abortive. About this time, singular events occurred in Venezuela. The new government had gone into operation, and the prospects of the country were very fair. But suddenly the city of Caraccas, then the capital, was overwhelmed by an earthquake. A great part of the houses were shaken down, and 12,000 of the people perished. Other towns also felt the shock, and thousands of the inhabitants were killed.

10. The priests now declared this to be a visitation from Heaven, for the sins of the nation in deserting the cause of their king. The superstitious people were filled with terror, and deserting the cause of their country, flocked by thousands to the royal standard. The few patriots who remained true to their principles, fought bravely, but they were defeated, and the cause of tyranny again triumphed.

11. Soon after this, a very extraordinary man appeared on the side of the patriots. This was Simon Bolivar, a native of Caraccas. He perceived the necessity of freedom, for the happiness of his country, and he resolved if possible to achieve it. He was very rich, and had a thousand slaves. But these he set free, and used his fortune in raising troops to fight the enemies of freedom. I cannot tell you the whole story of this remarkable man. He fought a great many battles; sometimes with success, and sometimes experiencing defeat. But never disheartened, he rose superior to misfortune, and finally triumphed over the enemies of liberty.

12. In 1819, having finally defeated the royalists, he was hailed by the peo-

duced? 6. Germans? What happened in 1550? State of the country till 1806? What occurred in 1806? 7. What of Spain about the year 1810? American colonies? Inhabitants of Caraccas? First Congress? 8. New Grenada?

Catholic priests? Ravages? What occurred in 1812? 9. What events followed? What occurred at Caraccas? 10. Priests? People? Patriots? 11. Simon Bolivar? What of Boli-

ple as their Liberator. During the same year, New Grenada and Venezuela were united under one government, called the Republic of Colombia. The first Congress met in 1821, and the new government was then organized.

13. The war was now prosecuted with vigor; and, led by Bolivar, the patriots triumphed in all quarters. In December, 1823, it was announced that no enemy was left in the country to contend with.

14. Thus Colombia was set free, and soon other nations acknowledged her independence. Since that time, there have been some disturbances in the country, and Bolivar himself was at length suspected of an intention to become king of Colombia. But while the world was in doubt as to his real designs, he suddenly died, in Dec. 1830. On his death bed, he declared a sincere attachment to the liberties of his country, and there can be little doubt that these words were uttered in truth and sincerity.

CHAP. LXX.

PERU.

1. This country is divided into Low and High Peru. The first consists of a narrow plain, lying between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. This is

var in 1819? Union of New Grenada and Venezuela? What occurred in 1821? 13. The war? What was announced in 1823? 14. Colombia? Bolivar? His death?

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries? Mountains? Where is Titicaca Lake? Describe the Huallapa. Ucayale. Capital? Direction of Lima from Santa Fe? Mexico? Cuba? Describe the following towns: Cusco, Truxillo, Callao, Arequipa. Extent?
Ans. 500,000 square miles Population?
Ans. About 2,000,000.

about 100 miles wide, and 1500 miles long. Rain seldom or never falls here, and the soil is therefore barren, except along the banks of the rivers. High Peru consists of lofty plains crossed by ranges of mountains.

2. In our journey through this country, we shall find it necessary to travel with mules or lamas, for the roads are bad, and there are no bridges. We shall be delighted with the lamas, for they are gentle creatures, and will carry our baggage day after day over the mountains and through the valleys, with the greatest care and patience.



Lamas of Peru.

3. We shall find Lima to be a splendid city, and at Callao we shall meet with ships from various parts of Europe and America. In the mountains, we shall find rich mines of gold and silver, and at Guanaca Velica, at an elevation of 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, we shall meet with mines of quicksilver.

4. We must not fail to visit Cusco. It is a considerable place, being about as large as Providence. It has a great many splendid houses, built in the European fashion. We shall observe in

1. Division of Peru? Low Peru? High Peru? 2. Mode of travelling? Lamas? Describe the picture. 3. Lima? Callao? Mines?

this city, that three fourths of the people are Indians, and we shall notice in various parts of the town, the ruins of ancient walls, temples, and palaces, which have a strange appearance. If we inquire of some person about these ruins, he will tell us a very interesting story of the ancient city of Cusco, and the country of which it was the capital. I have not room to repeat the whole of this story here, but I will give a sketch of it.

5. About three hundred and fifty years ago, there lived in Spain an obscure boy, named Francis Pizarro. His occupation was feeding hogs; but having a bold spirit, he forsook this employment, and became a soldier. He came to America with other adventurers, and was at length so famous, as to be entrusted with the command of an expedition, for the discovery and conquest of Peru. While Cortez was employed in subduing Mexico, the fame of this great empire of South America had reached the ears of the Spaniards.

6. Dreaming now only of conquest, and amassing heaps of silver and gold, they resolved immediately to send an expedition against it. This, as I have said, was entrusted to Pizarro, who set out in a leaky vessel with one hundred and twenty men, in the year 1525. He sailed from the Bay of Panama, and after various adventures, and having received a small addition to his forces, he reached the coast of Peru.

7. The gentle and unsuspecting inhabitants came down to the water, and looked with strange wonder upon the vessels and the white men who had come to visit them. They then went

away, and brought provisions, which they gave to Pizarro. He and his men now landed, and the Cacique treated them with great kindness. Such was the friendly reception, given by the Peruvians to the white men, whose purpose was to rob and murder them!

8. Pizarro found the people to be of a copper color, like other Indians. They were clothed in garments of cotton and woollen cloth; the latter being made from the wool of the lama. Their persons were all decorated with gold and silver ornaments, and he noticed about the houses various utensils made of these precious metals. He therefore formed a high idea of the riches of the country, and became more eager in his desire to conquer it.

9. But I must tell you a little more about these Peruvians. Pizarro had with him a negro man, whose black skin and woolly head excited their wonder. They supposed he was painted, and therefore gave him a good scrubbing, but finding the color would not come off, their amazement was unbounded.

10. One day, the Cacique saw a Spaniard have a gun, and so he asked him the use of it. The Spaniard raised the piece to his eye, and fired the bullet through a board which was near. The Peruvians all around fell on their faces in fear, and the Cacique himself trembled very much. He then gave the man some strange drink, saying, 'Drink, my friend, of this, for truly thou makest a big noise, and seemest to me like the thunderer of the heavens.'

11. After a while, the adventurers left this spot, and touched at several other places along the coast. They were exceedingly pleased with the gen-

Guanca Velica? 4. Cusco? People? Ruins?
5. Francis Pizarro? What expedition was he entrusted with? Peruvian empire? 6. Spaniards? When and how did Pizarro set out?

What did he do? 7. Inhabitants? The Cacique? 8. Inhabitants? Gold and silver? What effect had these things on Pizarro's mind? 9. A

the manners and kindness of the Indians. One of the men was so delighted with them, that he resolved to stay among them, nor could the persuasions of his companions induce him to come away. They left him surrounded by the people, who caressed him, and seemed delighted with his intention of remaining among them.

CHAP. LXXI.

PERU.—CONTINUED.

1. Having examined the coast, and gained some information about the interior, Pizarro returned to Panama, and from thence to Spain. He gave an account of what he had seen to the king, who provided him with one hundred and twentyfive men. With these he returned to America, and, in 1531, set sail from Panama, in three vessels, with one hundred and eighty soldiers. He soon reached the coast of Peru, landed, and marched into the country, plundering and murdering the inhabitants without mercy.

2. I must now tell you something of the history of Peru, before the time I am speaking of. About four hundred years previous to the arrival of Pizarro, the empire is supposed to have been founded by Manco Kapac and his wife Mama Ozello. These two persons were said to be white, and came from some unknown country. They suddenly appeared among the people, who were then in a savage state, saying that

negro? 10. Spaniard and his gun? 11. The adventurers? One of the Spaniards?

1. Return of the expedition? What did the King of Spain do? How and when did Pizarro set sail for Panama? What did P. do after reaching the coast? 2. When and by whom was the empire of Peru founded? What of Manco Kapac and his wife? How did the Peruvians treat

they were children of the sun, sent to teach the Peruvians how to be happy. The inhabitants submitted to their direction. Manco taught them to cultivate the land, to manufacture clothing, and to erect huts. Ozello taught the women to spin, and gave them a taste for domestic duties.

3. These persons also persuaded the Indians to abolish the custom of sacrificing human victims to their idols, and taught them to worship one God, whose image or emblem was the sun. Under the influence of these sovereigns the Peruvians ceased to be savages, and became at length a great nation. The descendants of Manco continued to reign over the country, and for near four hundred years, it enjoyed peace and prosperity. The inhabitants increased, and many towns were built. These were filled with temples, where the worship of the sun was conducted with great pomp. The kings and princes were called Incas, or children of the sun, and they received from the people profound homage and veneration.

4. Thus all went on happily till a short time before Pizarro came. The kingdom was then divided between two Incas, who were brothers. One of these, called Huascar, resided at Cusco; the other, called Atahualpa, resided at Quito. They had become enemies, and in a recent battle the former had been defeated.

5. Atahualpa heard of Pizarro's arrival, and sent a messenger requesting him to come and see him. Pizarro

them? What did Manco teach? Mama Ozello?

3. What did they persuade the Peruvians to do? What did they teach? What effect had the government of Manco? His descendants? The country? Inhabitants? Towns? Temples? Kings? Princes? 4. What had happened a short time before Pizarro came? Huascar? Atahualpa? Which had been defeated? 6. Mes-

accepted this with pleasure, and went to the Inca's residence, where he was received with the greatest respect. The soldiers were treated with hospitality, and even the horses were attended with care. The Peruvians, who had never seen horses before, observed that they chewed their bits, and imagined that they fed upon metal; they accordingly brought them large pieces of gold and silver to eat. The soldiers encouraged the people to bring more gold and silver to the horses, which however they took care privately to put into their pockets.

6. Pizarro found great difficulty in making the Inca understand what he had to say. He commanded the interpreter to make the following speech;—'My master, a powerful king of countries lying far to the east, and his holiness, the Pope, the great head of the christian church, have sent me and my soldiers to deliver the Inca and his people from the power of the devil.' This was repeated by the interpreter to Atahualpa; but he could not comprehend one word of it.

7. After mutual civilities, Pizarro and the Inca parted; the former removing with his troops to a palace at the distance of a mile, which the latter had provided.

8. It was agreed, that Atahualpa should visit the Spaniards the next day. Accordingly, the Peruvians began their preparations at sunrise, and were occupied till near night, in arranging themselves for the ceremony. At length, all things being ready, they set forward, and proceeded toward the place which the Spaniards occupied.

9. The Inca suspected no harm,

but he did not know Pizarro. That cruel man had arranged his troops, and placed his cannon in such a manner, that he could easily make a captive of the king, and kill those who should be disposed to defend him.

10. At length Atahualpa came in great pomp; he was attended by his chief men, and an escort of thirty thousand warriors. He was carried by some of the men upon a litter, shining with gold and silver. The chiefs and principal men were borne along in the same manner. The litters were surrounded by many singers and dancers.

11. At length, the Inca approached the Spaniards, and Valverde, a Catholic priest, then came forward, holding a cross in his hand. This he held up before the Inca, and made a long address. He told him of the creation, the fall of Adam, and the death and resurrection of Christ. He then spoke of the Pope, and told the Inca, that he, the Pope, being Christ's vicar on earth, had made a present of all South America to the king of Spain. He then advised him to renounce his false religion, speedily become a Christian, and acknowledge himself a vassal of the king of Spain. On these conditions Valverde told the Inca, that he and his people should be treated kindly. If they refused, they must expect to be treated with the utmost severity.

12. Atahualpa listened with patience. He said he was willing to become the friend of the king of Spain, but never his slave. He said he could not imagine how the Pope could give

zarro and his troops? 8. What was agreed to be done the next day? The Peruvians? 9. The Inca? What arrangements had Pizarro made? 10. How was Atahualpa attended? How was he carried? The chiefs? Singers and dancers? 11. Valverde? What address did he make to

sage to Pizarro? What did he do? How was he treated? Soldiers? Horses? 6. What speech did Pizarro have made to the Inca? Did the Inca understand this speech? 7. Removal of Pi-

away what never was his; and as to his faith, it was the religion of his fathers, and he should never change it. After this, the Inca asked Valverde where he learned all the things he had told him about the creation. 'From this book,' replied the priest, handing him a breviary, containing extracts from the Bible. Atahualpa took it, and examined it carefully: he held it to his ear, and replied, 'It does not say a word to me.' He then threw it away with disdain.

13. Valverde now turned to the Spaniards, and exclaimed, 'Revenge! Christians, revenge! Behold how the word of God is spurned! To arms, and extirpate these dogs, who trample the word of God beneath their feet!' At these words, Pizarro gave the signal of attack. In a moment the beating of drums, and the noise of military instruments resounded through the air, while the cannons and musquetry carried death and slaughter into the midst of the Peruvian army. The horsemen rushed from their ambuscade, and Pizarro at the head of his infantry, attacked the guard, that surrounded the Inca.

14. The chiefs of the nation encircled their prince, forming a bulwark with their bodies to screen him from danger; the rest, dismayed, had fled; a great number fell by the swords of the cavalry, or were trampled to death by the horses. Pizarro at length reached the litter that contained the Inca; when, seizing him by the arm, he dragged the unhappy prince to the earth, and ordered him to be conducted to his quarters.

the Inca? What reply did the Inca make? What did Atahualpa ask? How did Valverde reply? What did the Inca do with the breviary? 13. What exclamation did Valverde make? What did Pizarro now do? Describe the scene that fol-

15. Four thousand Peruvians, among whom were several children, women, and old people, were left dead upon the field; while none of the Spaniards received the smallest wound, except Pizarro, whose hand was bruised by one of his own people, at the moment he was seizing the Inca. During the whole of this carnage, Valverde did not cease to excite and encourage the Spanish soldiers in their work of death.

CHAP. LXXII.

PERU.—CONCLUDED.

1. The night after this event, was spent by the Spaniards in revelry and mirth. The next day, they took possession of the Peruvian camp, where they found immense treasures of gold, silver and precious stones. Atahualpa, being now a prisoner, offered Pizarro a large room full of gold and silver, if he would give him his liberty. To this Pizarro agreed, and accordingly messengers were sent throughout the kingdom, to collect the ransom. After a while, the whole amount was received, and delivered to Pizarro. The Inca then demanded to be released, but the faithless Spaniard would not let him go. He was still kept a prisoner, and treated very cruelly.

2. At length, on some slight pretence, Pizarro caused him to undergo a mock trial, after which he was condemned to death. The poor king fell upon his knees, and begged Pizarro to

lowed. 15. Conduct of Valverde during the slaughter?

1. The Spaniards on the following night? The next day? Atahualpa? To what did Pizarro agree? How much gold and silver was brought? Did Pizarro release the Inca, when the ransom was paid? How was Atahualpa treated? 2.

spare his life; but in vain. The cruel Spaniard had no pity in his heart. He commanded some negroes to execute the sentence, and Atahualpa was accordingly strangled.

3. I am sorry to tell my little reader these horrid stories; but alas! they are true, and we can never efface them from the record of human actions. We may draw wisdom from these sad passages of history. They show us what frightful acts of wickedness mankind may be led to commit through avarice. We must recollect also, that all these things were done by Pizarro and his men, by the sanction of the catholic religion, and under the pretence of serving the cause of Christianity. We may learn from this, that religious pretences are vain, and that the true character of men is to be known by their actions, not by their professions.

4. I will not distress my little readers by detailing the farther history of the conquest of Peru. It will be sufficient to say, that Paula, a brother of Atahualpa, succeeded him as Inca; he was defeated however by Pizarro, who soon after entered the city of Cusco with his army. Quito was next taken, and soon the conquest of the whole country was completed. The story of the awful cruelties committed by the Spaniards in subduing the country, would fill a book. In 1533, Pizarro, who had amassed immense wealth, founded the city of Lima, where he built himself a magnificent palace, and lived in great splendor. He was governor of the country, but his cruelty raised up

enemies, who entered his palace, and slew him, in the year 1541.

5. From this time, the whole of Peru, then including Bolivia, continued to be a Spanish province, ruled by a viceroy, appointed by the king of Spain. In 1747, Lima was destroyed by a terrible earthquake. It began about ten o'clock at night with a sudden noise, and a frightful shaking of the earth. In three minutes the whole city was a heap of ruins. Houses, churches, palaces, were all tumbled to the ground, and 1300 persons were crushed to death beneath them. Callao experienced a still more dreadful fate. Of 4000 people in the town, 200 only escaped, and of twentythree vessels in the harbor, nineteen were swallowed up.

6. While Colombia and Mexico were agitated by a revolution, Peru remained quiet. But in 1821, Gen. San Martin raised an army of 6000 men, drove the royalist forces from Lima, and took possession of that city. The country was then declared independent.

7. But after this, the people became dissatisfied with the change, and everything was thrown into confusion. The royalist forces returned to Lima, and for a time the spirit of liberty was put down. Soon after this, Bolivar marched into the interior from Colombia, with a considerable army, and drove the Spanish troops back into the country. They were finally defeated by the patriots, under General Sucre, and from this time all resistance ceased. A constitution was now formed similar to that of Colombia, and in 1825 the new government went into operation.

His trial and execution? 3. What may we learn from the history of the conquest of Peru? 4. Paula? Pizarro and his army? Quito? Cruelties of the Spaniards? What was done in 1533? What office did he hold? When and why was he

slain? 5. What of Peru after Pizarro's death? Describe the earthquake at Lima in 1747. At Callao? 6. Peru? San Martin? The country? 7. What after this? Bolivar? Gen. Sucre? Constitution? What happened in 1825?

CHAP. LXXIII.

BOLIVIA.

1. If we continue our travels to the south, from Peru, we shall soon reach Bolivia; a country remarkable for its great elevation, and for its fertile valleys and plains. The great chain of the Andes passes through it from north to south, and here, as in other parts of South America, their peaks are covered with perpetual snow. The country has rich mines of silver, though they are less productive than formerly.

2. Every new place presents something interesting to a traveller, and in these regions, we shall constantly find objects to excite our attention. The lofty mountains, with peaks glittering in the sun, the deep valleys, the roaring waterfalls, the strange wild animals, and the singular people, will not fail to afford constant themes of amusement.

3. We must be particular to visit Potosi. It is now a decayed town, but once contained 160,000 inhabitants. The mines were then the richest in South America, and are said to have been discovered in a very singular manner. Soon after the country was conquered by the Spaniards, an Indian who was climbing the mountain in pursuit of a deer, laid hold of a shrub which came up by the roots. To his great surprise, he saw a large mass of silver beneath where it grew. He told the secret to a friend of his, who disclosed it to others. The mine was first opened in 1545. The quantity of silver that has been taken from these

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries? Mountains? Describe the Lake Titicaca. Describe the Vermejo R. Pilcomayo? Capital? Direction of Chuquisica from Lima? Santa Fe? Where is Potosi?

mines is prodigious, but it is now nearly exhausted.

4. Some of the principal towns are La Plata or Chuquisica, the capital, Oropesa, situated in a district of remarkable fertility, and La Paz. The greater part of the country, which is now embraced within the limits of Bolivia, was originally a division of Peru, and came into the hands of the Spaniards, at the conquest of that country. It remained attached to Peru, until the year 1824. At that time, a patriot army under General Sucre defeated the royalists, and on the 6th of July, 1825, the country was declared independent.

5. In August of the same year, the Congress met, and adopted a constitution, the plan of which was furnished by Bolivar. The republic thus established embraced not only a section of Peru, but some fertile districts, which had before been attached to Buenos Ayres. The name Bolivia was adopted in honor of Bolivar.

CHAP. LXXIV.

CHILI.

1. We shall find Chili to be a long

1. For what is Bolivia remarkable? The Andes? Mines? 3. Potosi? How were the mines of Potosi discovered? 4. Principal towns? Country of Bolivia? What took place in 1824? What on the 6th of July, 1825? 5. What in August? What did the Republic embrace? What of the name Bolivia?

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries of Chili? Shape of Chili? Mountains? Capital? Direction of Santiago from Quito? Lima? Chuquisica? Describe the following towns: Copiapo, La Serena, Valparaiso, Valdivia, Concepcion. Where is the island of Juan Fernandez? Chiloe island? Extent? *Ans* About one tenth part that of the United States Population? *Ans*. 1,200,000.

narrow strip of land, lying between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. As we pursue our journey to the south, we shall cross a great many rapid streams, which rush down from the mountains and plunge into the sea. We shall notice that the climate of Chili is delightful, and the soil very fertile. We shall observe vast meadows covered with grass so high, as to conceal the cattle that are grazing in them.

2. We shall find on the hills, rich vineyards, from which the people make a great deal of wine. If we turn our attention to the Andes, we shall observe that many of the peaks are volcanic. At night, when all around us is still, we shall hear them muttering in the distance, and we shall often see smoke and flames streaming from their tops. If we turn our eyes to the west, we shall see the mighty Pacific, the largest of all oceans, reaching far beyond our sight, and wrapping one third of our globe in its immense sheet.

3. Santiago, or St Jago, the capital, is situated on a beautiful plain, ninety miles from Valparaiso. At the latter place, we shall find vessels from New York, Philadelphia, and Boston; and we shall probably see there, some persons we are acquainted with. After having been so long from home, we shall be delighted to meet with some of our own countrymen, and hear news from our friends.

4. If we are not tired of visiting mines, we can go and see those of Chili, which are very prolific. If we are in search of adventures, we may visit the Araucanians, a tribe of In-

dians, who inhabit the mountains in the southern part of Chili. They are a bold race of men, who love to be free, and the Spaniards have attempted in vain to conquer them.

5. About the year 1538, while Pizarro was engaged in the conquest of Peru, he sent one of his generals, and a small body of men, to subdue the Indian tribes then living in Chili. This general, whose name was Almagro, was at first well received by the natives. But perceiving that the Spaniards only came to enslave them, they fought Almagro and his army, and obliged them to quit the country.

6. In 1540, another army was sent to Chili, under Valdivia. He overcame all resistance, and founded a number of cities both at the north and south. In the year 1543, the chief of the Araucanians collected his warriors, and went against Valdivia, who was then at Santiago. A fierce engagement followed, and the Spaniards were cut to pieces. Valdivia himself was taken and afterwards killed.

7. For more than a century after this, the Araucanians continued at intervals to annoy the Spanish settlements, and to this day they entertain a strong aversion to the white people. From the conquest of Chili by Valdivia, to the year 1810, it was a Spanish province. At that date, revolutionary movements began.—After many vicissitudes, the independence of the country was secured, by the decisive victory gained by San Martin over the royalists, in 1817.

8. Some attempts were afterwards made by the royalists to recover their

1. Chili? Rivers? Climate? Soil? Meadows? 2. Vineyards? Andes? The Pacific? 3. Santiago? Valparaiso? 4. Mines? Araucanians? 5. What took place about the year 1538? What did the Indians do? 6.

Valdivia? What occurred in 1543? State of Valdivia? 7. Araucanians? Chili? What occurred in 1810? What took place in 1817? 8. Royalists? *Note.* The reader will understand that the Royalists were the friends of Spain, and

power, but their troops were defeated, and finally expelled from the country. The government remains in an unsettled state; but the people will, no doubt, soon establish a free constitution.

9. You will observe on the map, a small island near the coast of Chili, called Juan Fernandez. A Scotch sailor, by the name of Alexander Selkirk, was left upon this island in the year 1705, and here he remained four years. He had no other companions than cats and goats. He built himself a house, read his bible, and sometimes danced with the kids and kittens in front of his dwelling. At length, he was taken off, and carried to England. His adventures gave rise to the interesting story of Robinson Crusoe.

CHAP. LXXV.

PATAGONIA.

1. To the south of Chili, is a large country called Patagonia. But it will not do for us to travel there, for several reasons. In the first place, we should have to pass through the country of the Araucanians, and these fierce people might kill us. In the second place, Patagonia is a dreary, desolate and barren region; the western part consisting of high mountains, and the eastern of sterile plains. The inhabitants are some of them fierce and savage; and it is said that there are men among them almost as large as giants.

2. The people have no towns, but wished the country to remain a Spanish province. Government? 9. Juan Fernandez?

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries of Patagonia? Mountains? Where Terra del Fuego? Where are the Falkland? Where is Aurora Island? Georgia? Madre de Dios? Campana? Archipelago of

wander from place to place, dwelling in huts made of trees and bushes. Their dress is made of the skins of wild beasts; they have a great many horses, and the men, women and children ride extremely well. They sometimes engage in pursuing a species of Ostrich, which is common in the country. These birds cannot fly, but they run very swiftly. The Patagonians chase them on horseback, and when they get near, throw clubs at them, and kill them.



A Patagonian chasing Ostriches.

3. At the extreme point of South America is a large island, separated from the continent by the Straits of Magellan, called Terra del Fuego, or the Land of Fire. It is a cold, wild region, covered with mountains, whose tops are always buried in snow. Several of these are volcanic, and the sailors, in passing round Cape Horn, often see them blazing at night in the sky.

4. The shores of this island are rocky, and the restless ocean beats upon them with an incessant roar. The inhabitants are short, and live chiefly upon fish. They are a misera-

Chonos? East I.? West I.? Staten? Where is Cape Horn? Cape St Lucas? Cape Blanco?

1. Why should we not travel in Patagonia? 2. Inhabitants? Dress? Horses? The Ostrich? Describe the picture. 3. Terra

ble race, bearing some resemblance to the Esquimaux.

5. Patagonia was first discovered about the year 1519, by a famous Spanish navigator, called Magellan. He anchored on the eastern coast, and there he saw a race of wild gigantic people, who made a noise like bulls. One of them came on board the ship, and when an officer placed a looking-glass before him, he started back at the sight of his own hideous face, and knocked down two of the sailors. Some others came on board, and were so much astonished at what they saw, that they pointed to the skies, seeming to ask the Spaniards if they came down from heaven.

6. Magellan discovered the straits which are called by his name, and for many years, vessels going to the Pacific, used to pass through them. But the passage was very difficult, and dangerous; and Cape Horn being soon after discovered, vessels, since that time, have been accustomed to pass round it, in going from the Atlantic to the Pacific. But the voyage is still considered a dangerous one.

7. A great many ships have occasionally touched upon the coast of Patagonia, but no traveller has ever penetrated into the interior. We have therefore no very exact account either of the inhabitants or the country. The former are divided into various tribes; some of which are savage, and some gentle and harmless. They appear to remain in the same state of ignorance, degradation, and barbarism, as when first discovered.

Fuego? Volcanoes? 4. Shores? Inhabitants? 5. Discovery of Patagonia? Describe the people Magellan saw. 6. Straits of Magellan? Cape Horn? 7. Inhabitants of Patagonia? Their condition?

CHAP. LXXVI.

UNITED PROVINCES.

1. There are two ways by which we may go from Chili to the United Provinces. We may either travel across the Andes, or go on board a ship at Valparaiso, pass around Cape Horn, enter the mouth of the great River La Plata, and land near Buenos Ayres, the capital of the country. If we were to adopt this course, I should have time to tell you of several islands, which you will see on the Map, to the east of Terra del Fuego.

2. These are cold, frozen places, where we may meet with vessels from New England, which visit these islands for the purpose of catching seals. But the voyage round Cape Horn is always tempestuous, and as I love to wander among mountains, I think I shall take you to Buenos Ayres, by the route first mentioned.

3. Well! having provided ourselves with mules, we must mount their backs, and travel in an easterly direction: we shall soon be among the mountains, and for several days, shall be climbing

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries of the United Provinces? *Note.* This country is sometimes called Buenos Ayres, or the United Provinces of Buenos Ayres. Mountains? Describe the following rivers: Rio de la Plata, Salado, Salladillo, Colorado, Negro, Willows Vermejo, Pilcomajo, Willows. Where is Anegada Bay? Capital? Direction of Buenos Ayres from Santiago? Rio Janeiro? Quito? New York? Washington? Describe the following towns: Santa Fe, Cordova, Tucuman, Montevideo, Assumption.

1. How may we go from Chili to the United Provinces? 2. What of the islands southeast of Terra del Fuego? What of a voyage round Cape Horn? 3. In what manner must we travel from Santiago to Buenos Ayres? What moun-

over rocks and ridges, descending into dark ravines, and creeping with a trembling step along the edges of high, and dangerous precipices.

4. Captain Head, an Englishman, crossed these mountains a few years ago, in company with some other travellers. One day a horse, belonging to the party, fell partly over a precipice. The poor animal was aware of his danger, and hung on to the edge of the rock with his nose and fore legs. One of the men then came up, slipped a noose round his tail, and thus pulled him back into the path.

5. On another occasion, a terrible accident happened to a mule. The creature was loaded with a portmanteau, two large sacks of provisions, and many other things. As he was walking along upon a tremendous cliff, the baggage struck the point of a rock, and threw his hind legs over the precipice. He held on for a time with his nose, but the next mule that came along, gave it a knock, and down went the poor animal, whirling and bounding like a

by, he came marching up to them, the baggage still lashed to his body. He had a very sad countenance, which seemed to say, that he was very much ashamed of what had happened.

6. It is very probable that we shall meet with some jaguars, cougars and other wild animals on our journey. We shall also frequently see some lazy, hateful looking birds called condors. These feed chiefly upon dead animals. We shall have no difficulty in killing one, though they are larger than turkeys. But I advise you not to touch one of them, for they are filthy creatures, and have a most uncomfortable smell.

7. After leaving the mountains, we shall pass through some fertile districts, and at length reach the Pampas. These are of immense extent, and are covered with wild horses and wild cattle. We shall see the people occupied in catching them with a rope called a *lasso*. This is wound round the arm of a man on horseback, who approaches the creature he wishes to take, throws the rope with unerring skill, and fastens the noose at the end of it, around the neck or leg of the animal. In this way, the people supply themselves with abundance of cattle and horses.

8. We shall finally arrive at Buenos Ayres, which is larger than Boston, and beautifully situated on the south side of the La Plata. The town is regularly built, but not more than one fourth of the inhabitants are white; the rest are Indians, negroes, and mixed races.

9. The United Provinces are a very extensive country, being one half as large as the United States. The popu-



Travelling among the Andes

ball. He fell with a tremendous splash into a torrent beneath, and the party supposed he was lost. But by and

ains do we cross? Describe our passage through the mountains. 4. What of Capt. Head? One of the horses? 5. One of the mules? Describe

the picture. 6. Wild animals? Condors? 7. Pampas? Lasso? 8. Size of Buenos Ayres? Situation? Inhabitants? 9. Extent of the

lation is probably a million and a half. The land consists of a great plain, traversed by several large rivers. The soil is exceedingly fertile, and produces abundance of grain, though it is badly cultivated.

10. Monte Video and Assumption are both considerable places. But we shall not be disposed to stay long in this country, for they have terrible storms of thunder and lightning there. Beside, the people are for the most part ignorant and indolent, and except in the large towns, they generally live in miserable huts.

11. This part of America was first discovered by Juan Dios de Solis, in 1516. He entered the river La Plata, and sailed along the northern coast in a boat. Here he saw some Indians, who seemed by their gestures to invite him to land. Taking a part of his men with him, he accordingly went ashore; but in a little while, the savages surrounded them, and killed and devoured them in sight of their companions in the boat, who found it impossible to render them any assistance.

12. In 1526, Sebastian Cabot explored the La Plata, and gave it its name, which signifies the river of silver. In the year 1535, Don Pedro de Mendoza, came to the country with 2500 Spaniards, and founded the city of Buenos Ayres. They found the country inhabited by many tribes of Indians, who brought them provisions, and at first treated them kindly. But they soon became hostile, attacked the city, killed thirty of the settlers, and burnt almost all the houses.

13. After this, the colonists were

distressed by famine, and most of them died. The remainder left Buenos Ayres, and went to Assumption, which had already been founded. In a short time, more adventurers came from Spain. But the colony did not flourish till about the year 1540, when Don Alvarez became governor. He secured the friendship of the Indians, and converted many of them to the christian faith. Under his auspices, the colony flourished, and several towns were founded.

14. The story of the immense wealth found by Pizarro in Peru, had now been spread over all Europe, and everybody was inflamed with a desire to share in the golden harvest. Alvarez determined to cross the country to Peru, though the distance was very great, and the wilderness filled with savages.

15. Accordingly, he set out with 300 men, and after meeting with strange adventures, he finally came to an Indian town, consisting of 8000 houses. In the centre of it was a lofty tower of wood, containing a monstrous serpent, which the people worshipped. Alvarez attacked this town, which he captured; destroyed the tower, and being unable to proceed farther, returned to the settlements on the La Plata.

16. In the year 1586, some Jesuits came to the country, and undertook to convert the Indians. These men went fearlessly among the savages, followed them into the wilderness, and conducted with such a mixture of mildness and courage, as to gain their favor. They at length listened to these ministers of the Gospel, and thus many of the tribes

United Provinces? Population? Face of the country? Soil? 10. Monte Video? Assumption? Storms? People? 11. Discovery? Fate of Solis? 12. Sebastian Cabot? Men-

doza? The Indians? 13. Famine? Assumption? What took place in 1540? What did Alvarez do? 14. Why did Alvarez determine to cross the country to Peru? 15. Describe the

were eventually converted to Christianity. There appears to be no instance, either in the history of North or South America, in which missionary labors among the natives have proved so successful as here.

17. For many years after the settlement of the country, gold and silver were the principal objects of pursuit. But these not being found, the attention of the people was gradually turned to agriculture. The colony continued to increase; the hostility of the Indians abated; and many of them became mingled with the white inhabitants. Thus under the dominion of Spain, the affairs of the country went on, till the year 1806. At that time, a British force captured the city of Buenos Ayres, but in a few months, they were driven out by an army collected from the neighboring country.

18. In the year 1810, the people, finding that Spain, the mother country, was overrun by the French armies, formed a government for themselves, and this is now considered by the people, as the date of their independence. But from that time to the present, the government has been in a very unsettled state. After a long struggle, the royalists were expelled from the country, and peace was made with Spain in 1823.

19. Since that time, a war has taken place with Brazil, but its results were not important. The country still continues to be agitated with internal divisions, but these will probably cease

expedition of Alvarez. 16. Jesuits? 17. Gold and silver? Agriculture? What of the country till 1806? What occurred during that year? 18. What occurred in 1810? State of the country since that time? Royalists? What took place in 1823? 19. War with Brazil? State of the country?

in a short time, and the government, which is republican, will no doubt become established.

CHAP. LXXVII.

BRAZIL.

1. How shall we go from Buenos Ayres to Brazil? We may enter a vessel sail down the La Plata, and proceed to Rio Janeiro, the capital. But I think it would be pleasanter to ascend the Parana, visit Assumption, and then cross the mountains to Rio Janeiro. We shall find the country along the Parana in the highest degree fertile and beautiful. We shall pass through some forests, where the trees and shrubs are so thick and tangled, as to render our progress slow and difficult. At night we shall be obliged to sleep in the woods, and our ears will be filled with the howl of the jaguar and cougar. By day we shall be saluted by the chattering of hundreds of monkeys upon the trees, and we shall see parrots, parroquets, and other bright winged birds without number.

2. At length, we shall reach the mountains, and here we shall find a great many people engaged in washing

Questions on the Map of South America.—Boundaries of Brazil? Where are the Itiababa Mts? Great Mts? Where is the Bay of All Saints? Where is Lake de los Palos? Describe the following rivers: Amazon, St Francisco, Tocantins, Araguay, Parana, Tapajos, Madeira, Parnaibo, Xingu. Capital? Direction of Rio Janeiro from Buenos Ayres? Santiago? Quito? Describe the following towns: Villa Boa, Olinda, Paracuta, Cuiaba, Villa Rica, Spirito Santo, St Francisco, Para, Pernambuco, St Salvador, Macapa, Santos.

1. How may you go by water from Buenos Ayres to Brazil? How by land? Country along

gold dust, and diamonds from the sand. We shall observe that the trade between these districts and the capital, is carried on by innumerable troops of mules. The common burthen of a mule is three hundred pounds, and he often carries it to the distance of 1000 miles. At length, after a tedious journey, we shall reach Rio Janeiro, which is one of the finest cities in South America. The harbor is excellent, and here we shall find ships from all parts of the world. Among the captains of the vessels, we shall no doubt be able to find some of our acquaintances, and again hear news from our own country.

3. The streets of Rio Janeiro are dirty, but there are several pleasant walks, and handsome squares. The churches are very splendid, and the people, who are Catholics, are exceedingly fond of religious shows and processions. Every day, the priests may be seen marching about in strange dresses, and the people look upon them with great reverence.

4. We shall here have a chance of seeing an emperor. He is a man who lives in a great palace, has fine horses, rides in a splendid coach, and makes all the people obey him. When he goes abroad, he is attended by a guard of armed men, so as to protect him from mischief.

5. Brazil is a country of vast extent, being somewhat larger than the United States, and embracing about one third part of all South America. The population is about 4,000,000. The interior is almost entirely inhabited by tribes of Indians, who live in a savage

state. The country generally is exceedingly fertile, and large portions of it are covered by thick forests filled with serpents, monkeys, jaguars, and other wild animals. There is no part of the globe so loaded with vegetation as this. Where the land is cultivated, it yields an abundant harvest. Delicious fruits are produced in abundance, and the very air is perfumed with the fragrance of spices, that grow in the forests.

6. It would be a very pleasant thing to travel into the interior of this wild country, were it not for the hideous alligators, that throng the rivers, the terrible serpents that lie coiled in the thickets, and the sly jaguars that infest the woods and plains.

7. Brazil was first discovered in the year 1500, by Pedro Alvarez Cabral, a Portuguese navigator. He landed on the coast, erected a cross under a spreading tree, and there performed the catholic ceremony of mass, amid bursts of music, and peals of cannon. The Indians flocked to the spot in crowds to witness this strange celebration, and the catholic writers say, that multitudes of them were miraculously converted to the christian faith.

8. Cabral having thus taken possession of the country, called it Santa Cruz, or the holy cross. The name was afterwards altered to Brazil, from a peculiar tree found in the country, called Brasas. He sent an account of his discovery to the king of Portugal. But as no gold and silver were discovered in the country, the Portuguese only thought it a fit place for condemned criminals. Accordingly they sent there two ships a year, loaded with thieves, robbers, and

the Parana? Forests? 2. Mountains? Trade? Rio Janeiro? Harbor? Ships? 3. Streets? Churches? People? Priests? 4. Emperor? 5. Extent of Brazil? Population? Indians?

Country? Forests? Vegetation? 6. Alligators? Serpents? Jaguars? 7. Discovery of Brazil? 8. Name of Brazil? What did the Portuguese think of Brazil? Who were sent there?

other scoundrels, who were left to take care of themselves. The vessels then took in a cargo of parrots and dye woods, and returned to Portugal.

9. In the year 1548, the Jews in Portugal were persecuted, by some Catholics, called Inquisitors, and many of them were consequently banished to Brazil. These industrious people began to cultivate the land, which was found very prolific; and in a short time, the colony was deemed of such importance, that the king sent out Thomas de Sousa to govern it.

10. St Salvador was founded in the year 1549, and is the oldest town in Brazil. From this period the colony continued to flourish, and soon attracted the attention of the various governments of Europe. The Dutch became eager to possess a part of the country, and made various attempts to effect that object. But in 1661, they relinquished their design, for eight tons of gold, which the king of Portugal gave them.

11. From this date, till the year 1806, the country remained in quiet possession of the king of Portugal. But at that time, Portugal being invaded by the French, the royal family left their country, and embarked for Brazil. In 1821, the King, John VI., returned to Lisbon, leaving the government in the charge of his son, Don Pedro. In 1823, Brazil became independent, and since that time has remained under the government of Don Pedro, who is still emperor. Beside him, there is no other king, or emperor, on the whole continent of America, and it is to be hoped there may never be any more.

What cargoes did the vessels take in? 9. Jews? Thomas de Sousa? 10. St Salvador? The Dutch? What occurred in 1661? 11. What in 1806? In 1821? In 1823? Who is the only king or emperor?

CHAP. LXXVIII.

GUIANA.

1. Guiana is situated in the north-eastern part of South America, and consists of three colonies; one belonging to the English; one to the Dutch; and one to the French. Stabroek is the capital of the first, Paramaribo of the second, and Cayenne of the last.

2. The country along the coast is so low and flat, as to appear, when approached from the water, like a forest growing out of the sea. Yet these low lands are exceedingly fertile, abounding with every variety of delicious fruit. The air is always mild and balmy, and at all seasons, the trees are adorned with the open blossom and the ripe fruit. The climate seems to present a delightful union of spring and summer.

3. The European settlers principally live along the coast. The interior is inhabited by Indians, and has not been much explored. It appears to consist of hills and mountains, with valleys between, through which rivers flow to the sea. The country is covered with woods; and in some places the trees are so thick, and so woven together by creeping plants, as to form an impenetrable shade. These dusky thickets are the favorite haunts of the jaguar, cougar, and other wild animals.

4. As we shall not find it pleasant to travel here, I will tell you the story of Captain Waterton, an eccentric

Questions on the Map of South America.—
Boundaries? Where is Lake Tumucuraque? Describe Essequibo River. Where is Stabroek? Cayenne? Paramaribo?

1. Situation of Guiana? Division? 2. Country along the coast? Soil? Climate? 3. European settlers? Indians? The interior?

Englishman, who traversed the wilds of Guiana some years ago. He left the town of Stabroek in 1812, and proceeded up the river Demarara in a boat, in a southerly direction.

5. He soon passed the limits of the white population, and entered the country of the Indians. The weather here is always hot, and these people go almost naked. They live in small huts, and subsist chiefly upon birds and animals, which they kill in a very singular manner. They have a long tube, made of a reed; into this they put an arrow, the sharp point of which is dipped in wourali poison. They then blow the arrow out with great force; it flies through the air, and being well aimed, strikes the animal toward which it is directed. The poison is very active, and in a few minutes, the creature struck with the arrow, is dead. It is then taken and eaten, the flesh not being at all injured by the poison.

6. I must tell you something now about this strange poison. It is made by these Indians from a vine found in the woods, called *wourali*. They mix



Indian shooting a poisoned Arrow at a Peccary.

with this vine some other plants, the fangs of serpents, two kinds of poisonous ants, and a good deal of pepper. These are all boiled together in water,

Woods? Animals? 4. Repeat the story of

and the liquor thus obtained, is the famous wourali poison. The Indians prepare the mixture with magical ceremonies and solemn incantations. They appear to have a great deal of superstition about it.

7. Mr Waterton met with abundance of peccaries, which are a kind of pig. He saw droves of two or three hundred. The Indians shoot a great many of them with their arrows, and find them excellent eating. He saw animals resembling tigers, whole troops of monkeys, armadillos, ant-bears, porcupines, and a very singular animal called the sloth. This creature is only at home on the trees. If he happens to get upon the ground, he cries in a piteous manner, and appears to be as unhappy as a fish upon the land.

8. Mr Waterton also saw alligators in the river, and flocks of parrots, paroquets, and other birds among the trees. He also saw serpents called *camoudies*, which are of monstrous size, and crush animals to death, by coiling around their bodies. He met with many other serpents, some harmless, and some poisonous.

9. Our traveller went a great many miles into the wilderness, and often slept at night upon the banks of the river. But myriads of fire-flies illumined the darkness, and birds and beasts filled the solitude with their strange voices. A multitude of owls screeched and hooted in the most doleful manner; whippoorwills repeated their songs; and other birds kept chanting 'Willy-come-go, Willy-come-go' for hours together.

10. Mr Waterton was at length taken sick, and finally returned to Stabroek, and then went to England. But in 1816, he came again to Guiana,

Capt. Waterton's first expedition. 10 When did

and again began his wanderings. He made several expeditions, and on one occasion had a very remarkable adventure with an alligator, or cayman. This hideous reptile was first caught in the river by a hook with a rope attached to it. The Indians then pulled him to the shore, and Waterton, who was a fearless man, leaped upon his back, twisted his fore legs over his neck, and rode him safely to the land, amid the shouts of the savages.



Capt. Waterton on the Alligator's Back.

11. I cannot tell you of all the strange things which Mr Waterton did and saw. He once caught a *camoudi* snake, which he carried home alive; and he saw a great many strange bats, called vampires, which come down silently at night and suck the blood from people's feet, when they are asleep.

12. Guiana is said to have been discovered by Columbus, in the year 1498. In 1504, Vasco Nunes landed on the coast, and gave it the name of Terra Firma. But the country was not explored till about the year 1595, when Sir Walter Raleigh came from England in search of an imaginary kingdom, called El Dorado.

13. I must tell my reader, that at

Mr Waterton come a second time to Guiana? Relate his adventure with an alligator. Describe the picture. 11. What of the *camoudi* snake?

this period, the interior of South America had not been explored. Along the sea-board, as well on the eastern as the western side, the inhabitants generally believed in the existence of a vast empire, situated near the heart of the continent. The most remarkable stories were told about this country. It was said to surpass Mexico and Peru, in riches. The capital city, called Manoa, was reported to have 3000 persons in one street employed in working silver. The columns of the palace were said to be of porphyry and alabaster; the galleries of ebony and cedar; the throne of ivory, and the ascent to it by steps of gold. In the country it was affirmed that there were hills of silver, gold and salt.

14. The king of this realm, called the Great Moxos, was represented as living in the utmost splendor. It was said that he was anointed with costly gums and spices, and that when he went abroad, he was covered with gold. On this account, he was called El Dorado, or the gilded; and this name was afterwards transferred to the empire itself.

15. Such were the gorgeous descriptions of this imaginary realm; and as few persons doubted its real existence, a great many adventurers came to America in search of it. The Spanish government spent millions of dollars, and hundreds of brave men perished in these idle enterprizes.

16. Sir Walter Raleigh heard of this famous kingdom, and at the time before mentioned, came to South America, determined to penetrate into the country in search of this wonderful place. He first visited Guiana, ex-

Vampires? 12. Discovery of Guiana? Vasco Nunes landed? Sir Walter Raleigh? El Dorado? 16. What of Raleigh's expedition? 17

plored the coast, and finally sailed up the Orinoco to the distance of 600 miles; but not being able to discover the kingdom he sought, he returned to England.

17. About the year 1634, sixty English and French people had settled in Surinam, now called Dutch Guiana. In 1650, the inhabitants having increased, they were taken under the protection of Great Britain. In 1667, this colony was taken by the Dutch, and was finally relinquished to them by the British in 1674, in exchange for the province of New York.

18. Similar settlements were made by other European powers, on different parts of the coast. The Spanish and Portuguese, as well as the English, French and Dutch, had each a colony here. But Spanish Guiana is now incorporated with Colombia, and Portuguese Guiana now constitutes a part of Brazil.

CHAP. LXXIX.

WEST INDIES.

1. In returning from Rio Janeiro, we shall pass between the West India islands. These are very numerous, and lie scattered in the sea between Florida and the northern coast of South America. We shall meet with a great many vessels from all parts of Europe

What of the year 1634? What of 1650? 1667? 1674? 18. Spanish colony in Guiana? Portuguese?

Questions on the Map of West Indies.—
Direction of Cuba from New York? New Orleans? City of Guatemala? City of Mexico? Direction of the following islands from Cuba? Hayti, Porto Rico, Jamaica, Santa Cruz, Antigua, Gaudaloupe, Dominica, Martinico, Trinidad, Tobago, Barbadoes.

and America, going to these islands to get sugar, coffee, rum, tobacco, oranges, lemons, pine-apples and other fruit.

2. We must stop a while at Havana in Cuba. In that noble harbor, we shall see a multitude of ships, and we shall easily find in the city, persons from Boston, New London, New York, Philadelphia, Charleston, and other towns in the United States. These people bring horses, cattle, hogs, lumber, furniture, potatoes, onions, and many other articles, which they exchange for the produce of the islands. We must be sure and eat some of the oranges, pine-apples, and other delicious fruit, which we shall find here, as cheap as apples and pears in our own country.

3. We must not stay long in the West Indies, for the weather is hot at all seasons of the year, and there is great danger of the yellow fever. We must also beware of the dreadful hurricanes, which sometimes prostrate the houses, and dash the vessels to pieces upon the shore.

4. Cuba is the largest of the West India islands, and is nearly as extensive as all New England. It belongs to Spain, and contains about 700,000 inhabitants. Most of these are negro slaves who raise tobacco, sugar, and coffee on the plantations. Havana is the capital, and contains about as many inhabitants as Boston. Its harbor is one of the best in the world.

5. This island was discovered by Columbus in 1492. The Indians at first fled away, but after awhile they came back, and kissed the feet of the Spaniards, supposing them to be a superior order of beings. Columbus sent

1. Situation of the West Indies? Vessels? 2. Havana? Trade? Fruit? 3. Climate? 4. Cuba? Extent? To whom does Cuba belong? Population? Slaves? Havana? 5. Dis-

some of his men sixty miles into the interior. They saw many scattered huts, and one village, containing more than 1000 people.

6. In 1511, the Indians were conquered by a Spanish general, named Don Jago de Velasquez. The chief Cacique endeavored to oppose the Spaniards, but his warriors all fled away at the noise of their muskets and cannon. The Cacique was taken, and cruelly burnt alive. This alarmed the other Indians so much, that they ceased all farther opposition, and submitted to Velasquez. But this did not save them, for the whole race was gradually exterminated. The island was rapidly settled by the Spaniards, who remained in quiet possession of it for more than 200 years.

7. In the year 1762, it was captured by a British armament, but the next year, it was relinquished to Spain by treaty, and has since remained in her possession.

8. Hayti is a little more than half as large as Cuba. It is diversified with hills, valleys, and mountains, and is exceedingly fertile. St Domingo, the capital, is about as large as Providence, and is the oldest town in America, having been founded by Columbus, in the year 1496. He first came to this island in 1492, immediately after discovering Cuba. He reached it in Dec. and called it Hispaniola, a name which it retained for many years. It afterwards received the appellation of St Domingo, but is now generally called Hayti, which was the original Indian name.

9. The inhabitants of this island

flocked to see Columbus and his men, and gazed intently upon them, and their ship. They were ignorant, simple, and timid, but they treated the strangers with the greatest kindness and respect. One day, as Columbus was sailing along the coast, his vessel struck upon a rock, and began to go to pieces. The natives put off from the shore in their canoes, and carried all the Spaniards safely to the land. They then took out everything that was valuable from the ship, and carried it ashore. These articles were carefully guarded by the Cacique, who restored them to Columbus, and kindly endeavored to console him for his misfortune. Some of the Indians pitied the Spaniards so much, as to shed tears for them.

10. When Columbus was about to sail for Spain, some of his men, being greatly delighted with the country and the inhabitants, requested leave to stay. Accordingly he left thirtyeight of them, and these formed the first colony ever planted in America by the Europeans. The Spaniards afterwards made other settlements in the island. But in 1722, it was divided between France and Spain; the western part being taken by the former, and the eastern by the latter.

11. In 1789, France being in a state of revolution, disturbances commenced in the French colony of Hayti. At length, the negro slaves, united with the free blacks, rose against the white inhabitants, put many of them to death, and obliged others to save themselves by flight. The Spaniards gave up the island, but the French continued the

recovery of Cuba? Indians? The interior? 6. What took place in 1511? Cacique? The other Indians? Settlement of Cuba? 7. What happened in 1762? 1763? To whom has it since belonged? 8. Extent of Hayti? Face of the

country? Soil? St Domingo? Columbus? Names of Hayti? 9. Natives? Shipwreck of Columbus? 10. First European colony in America? Division in 1722? 11. What occurred in 1789? Negroes? Spaniards? French? Chris-

struggle for several years. The negroes displayed much courage and energy, and Christophe, whom they finally proclaimed king, evinced a great deal of military talent.

12. In 1801, the country was declared independent, and in 1803, the French evacuated the island. They have since had war among themselves, but for several years, they have gone on prosperously. Their government is now republican.

13. Porto Rico is about as large as Connecticut. It is diversified with hills and valleys, and is very fertile. It was discovered by Columbus in 1493, and is supposed at that time to have contained 600,000 inhabitants; but the whole race is now extinct. The island belongs to the Spanish, and contains 150,000 people.

14. Jamaica belongs to England, and is somewhat larger than the State of Massachusetts. The interior is occupied by mountains, whose loftiest peaks are 7000 feet high. A large portion of the island is covered with rocks, cliffs, and precipices, but it abounds in rivers, and parts of it are exceedingly fertile. The productions are nearly the same as in the other islands.

15. It was discovered by Columbus in 1494, and was soon after settled by the Spaniards. It originally contained 100,000 native Indians; but in a short period, the whole race had ceased to exist. The greater part of them were killed, by their bloody invaders. The island was several times plundered by the English, and in 1655 it was taken by them. In 1795, the slaves who were called maroons, revolted, and a

war with them commenced. They retreated to the rocks and mountains, where they were hunted by bloodhounds, and many of them were shot like wolves and tigers; the rest were compelled to submit.

16. The West Indies have sometimes been visited by earthquakes; in the year 1692, a terrible earthquake happened in Jamaica. Distant hills were driven together; mountains were divided, and falling into the valleys, overwhelmed the inhabitants. Whole settlements sunk into the earth, and were covered with water; plantations were removed from their situations, and all the sugar works in the island were shaken down.

17. The flourishing city of Port Royal was overwhelmed, and nearly all the houses were covered with water, in the space of two minutes. Only the chimneys of the tallest houses could be seen above the flood. No less than two thousand of the inhabitants perished.

18. As hurricanes are frequent among the West India Islands, I must tell you of one that happened in Jamaica in 1722. The wind blew from the south, and soon the heavy swell of the sea came rushing and thundering against the shore, with a tremendous noise. Then the negro huts, which were slightly made, were all blown down. By and by, the tempest burst in the doors and windows of the stronger houses, tore off the roofs, and tumbled the whole down upon the heads of the inhabitants in a heap of ruins.

19. The air was filled with a thousand fragments of stones and sticks,

tope? 12. What happened in 1801? In 1803? What has happened since? Government? 13. Porto Rico? Discovery? Natives? To whom does the island belong? Population? 14. Ja-

maica? Face of the country? Productions? 15. Discovery? Indians? English? Maroons? 16. Earthquakes? Describe the earthquake in 1692. Hurricanes? Describe the hurricane of 1722

some of which were carried to the distance of many miles. Whole towns were prostrated, many of the cattle were forced into the sea and drowned; the crops were crushed, trees twisted off, many of the inhabitants killed, and thousands left without shelter. The awful storm continued through the night; and nothing was heard but the howling voice of the tempest, the crushing of houses, the overthrow of churches and steeples, and sometimes, the piercing screams of the wounded and the dying inhabitants.

CHAP. LXXX.

WEST INDIES.—CONTINUED.

1. I have now told you of the four principal islands, Cuba, Hayti, Porto Rico, and Jamaica. When they were discovered, the inhabitants were numerous 'as ants upon ant hills.' It is supposed that the whole number exceeded 3,000,000. They were a cheerful and happy people; the fertile soil afforded them abundance of food, with very little labor; and the climate was so mild, that houses covered with palm leaves were a sufficient shelter.

2. Thus placed beyond the reach of want and care, they spent much of their time in amusement. They often glided forth in their canoes upon the waters that surrounded their green islands, and at night, in the breath of the cool sea breezes, they collected upon the lawns, and slopes, and spent their time in dancing. Sometimes 50,000 were assembled, the greater part of whom, were engaged in this pastime.

3. The people were governed by

1. Four principal islands of the West Indies? Original inhabitants? Their situation? 2. Amusements? 3. Government? Body of a king? Reli-

gious belief? What did an old man say to Columbus? 4. Future state of the good? 5. How did the Spaniards treat the native Indians? 7.

kings or caciques, who generally ruled with mildness and equity. When one of these died, it was the custom of the people to preserve the body by baking it in an oven. They believed in a future state of rewards and punishments; and it is said, that an old man of Cuba addressed Columbus, on his arrival there, in the following words: 'We know not whether you are men, or beings of a superior order. You have come with a force that we cannot resist, and have therefore only to submit. But if you are men, you must be aware that after this life, there is another, in which good and bad men are rewarded according to their works.'

4. These people supposed that after death, the spirits of the good were conveyed to a pleasant valley, called Coyaba, a place of ease and tranquillity, abounding in delicious fruits, cool shades, and murmuring rivulets; a country where thirst never raged, and the hurricane was unknown. Here they believed they should enjoy the company of their friends and forefathers, and thus live in eternal bliss.

5. Such were the inhabitants of these four islands, whom the Spaniards thought fit to exterminate by fire and sword. I should be glad to spare my young readers the pain of listening to the cruelties practised on these gentle islanders. But the facts are before the world, and they cannot be disguised. After they got possession of the islands, they made slaves of many of the natives, and compelled them to work in the mines. Others were hunted in the woods, and shot down like wild beasts. Thousands were killed, merely to give employment to the Spanish soldiers.

gious belief? What did an old man say to Columbus? 4. Future state of the good? 5. How did the Spaniards treat the native Indians? 7.

6. They were sometimes taken into the water, and baptized by the priests, and then immediately slain. These Catholics were far from believing such things contrary to their religion; many of them took vows to destroy a certain number every day, in honor of Christ, and the twelve apostles. So thoroughly was this work of destruction executed, that in a few years after their discovery, all the natives of these islands were swept away, and for many years not a vestige of them has remained.

7. So far indeed as this portion of the West Indies is concerned, it would have been better if the discovery of Columbus had never been made. The 3,000,000 of native Indians undoubtedly enjoyed a greater amount of happiness, than the much smaller number of individuals who at present inhabit it, the greater part of whom are slaves. Beside, these islands have been, since their discovery, the constant theatres of wickedness and crime. Thousands of innocent people have been murdered by the Spaniards, as I have just related; millions of negroes have here spent their lives in hopeless slavery; and here too, pirates and buccaneers have committed their most cruel and desperate actions.

8. I will now tell you of the Bahama Islands. These are about 100 in number; but the greater part of them are small, barren, and uninhabited. Those of most importance are Bahama, Abaco and Providence. The Bahamas belong to the English, and contain about 14,000 people, 11,000 of whom are negroes. The exports are dye woods, cotton, salt, and live turtles.

9. One of these islands, now called Cat

Why would it have been better for these islands if they had never been discovered? 8. The Bahama Isles? 9. Cat Island? What happened in

Island, was the first land discovered by Columbus. It was inhabited by Indians, who called it Guanahani; but he called it St Salvador. The Spaniards made some settlements upon the Bahamas, but in 1672, they were entirely uninhabited. At that time Providence was taken possession of by the British, and a regular settlement made by them in 1720. Since that time, they have remained in their possession.

10. The group of islands, lying to the south east of Cuba, are called the Caribbee Islands. The most important are Antigua, Dominica, Trinidad, Tobago, and Barbadoes, belonging to Great Britain; and Guadaloupe, and Martinico belonging to France. These are in general level and very fertile; they produce a great deal of sugar, coffee, rum, indigo, and cotton. A multitude of vessels are constantly employed in carrying on the trade between these islands, and the rest of the world.

11. Several of these islands were discovered by Columbus on his second voyage, in 1494. Some of them were settled by the Spanish, some by the French, and some by the English. They have frequently changed masters, having been sometimes subject to one government, and sometimes to another. It would be tedious to tell you of all these things; but I must give you some account of the Caribs, the native Indians, found here on the discovery of the islands.

12. They were very different from the gentle natives of Cuba. They were restless, enterprising, and ardent, and considered war the great business of life. They did not hesitate to attack, plunder, and destroy any whom they

1672? In 1720? 10. Caribbee Islands? 11. Discovery? Settlement? Government? 12. Describe the Caribs or Caribbees.

could conquer, and they greedily devoured the bodies of their enemies. Among themselves they were peaceable, friendly, and affectionate. They deemed all strangers to be foes, and treated them as such. They were fond of liberty, and would not submit to the least restraint. Those which the Spaniards captured, killed themselves rather than become slaves.

13. These people had the art of manufacturing cotton cloth, earthen ware, and many other things. They lived in villages; their houses being made of poles, covered with palm leaves. In the centre of each village was a large building, which was a kind of state-house. Such were the Caribs; but they have long since disappeared from their native islands, and nothing remains of the race but their history.

CHAP. LXXXI.

THE BUCCANEERS.

1. The history of the West Indies would be incomplete if it did not include an account of a very extraordinary set of men, called *Buccaneers*, who lived by robbery upon the land and sea, between the year 1630 and 1700. They at first inhabited the island of Tortuga and a part of Hispaniola. Some remained at home to cultivate the land, and hunt wild animals; while the rest put to sea, and captured such vessels as they fell in with.

2. The origin of this strange society was this. When the other nations of Europe found that the Spaniards were getting immense quantities of gold and silver in America, they all became anxious to share in the rich harvest.

1. *Buccaneers*? What islands did the *Buccaneers* at first inhabit? What did they do? 2.

The English, French, Dutch, and Portuguese sent out expeditions to the New World, as it was called, for the purpose of making discoveries, founding colonies, and getting quantities of the precious metals.

3. The Spaniards thought that all America belonged to them, because Columbus had first discovered and taken possession of it, in the name of their king. Accordingly, they looked with an evil eye upon all the expeditions sent by other nations: they captured their vessels, murdered the settlers, and visited with fire and slaughter, all who sought to share in the spoil.

4. Well! Some French people had settled in the little island of St Christophers, and the colony was advancing rapidly, when the Spaniards came upon them, killed a great many of the men, and drove the rest away. Burning with revenge, those who escaped entered some Dutch vessels which were cruising against the Spaniards. These were very successful, and loaded their ships with gold and silver, which they took from Spanish ships.

5. Some merchants in France heard of all this, and determined to make a regular business of cruising against the Spaniards. Accordingly, they sent out a number of people for this purpose, who established themselves at Tortuga and Hispaniola, as I have mentioned before. This took place about the year 1632. They were called *Buccaneers*, because they roasted animals for food in the same manner that the Indians of the Caribbee Islands roasted their prisoners; a process which the latter called *boucaner*.

6 For near fifty years, these *Buccaneers* continued to live upon the
Origin of the *buccaneers*? 5. Why were they

islands; some scouring the seas for plunder, and some subsisting by the chase. But they were often attacked by the Spaniards, and their hatred toward that nation was thus increased. At length, the success of Pierre Le Grand, a famous French pirate, reached their ears. With twentyeight desperate men, in an open boat, he attacked a large Spanish ship which lay at anchor near the Bahama Islands, and after a short struggle, captured her. He then kept a part of the Spanish sailors, sunk his own boat, and sailed off to France with his magnificent prize.

7. Excited by this adventure, and animated by hostility to the Spaniards, the Buccaneers determined to live by plundering them by land and sea. They did not wait till they could build large vessels, but entering their canoes, they went to the port of Havana, and in the most daring manner, captured and carried off boats, laden with tobacco, and other articles of value.



The Buccaneers making an Attack.

8. These spoils enabled them to build large vessels, and to undertake voyages of greater length. In their next expedition, they took several large vessels laden with gold and silver.

called buccaneers? 6. What of them for near fifty years? Pierre Le Grand? Why did the buccaneers now determine to live by plundering the

Their success attracted crowds of adventurers from all parts of Europe; and they became so formidable, that the Spaniards found it necessary to send out large ships of war, for the protection of their trade. These pirates still retained the name of Buccaneers, and continued to be, for more than twenty years, the terror of every regular trader to the American shores.

9. They generally divided themselves into companies of about thirty men; they had certain rules by which they shared their spoils, and which they observed with great exactness. They were led by the bravest man of their number, whose orders in the hour of battle, were strictly obeyed. Some of these leaders displayed extraordinary skill and courage, and several of them became very famous. The most celebrated of them all was a Welshman, by the name of Morgan. He ran away from home, when a boy, and went to sea. He was sold into bondage in the West Indies, where he heard of the Buccaneers. He soon joined them, and at length became their leader; and under him, they performed many wonderful achievements.

10. They captured the island of St Catherines, took the city of Havana, pillaged Port au Prince, and took Porto Bello by storm. They also took several other towns, and carried off immense plunder.

11. The story of Bartholomew, a Portuguese adventurer, is very singular. He fitted out a vessel at Jamaica, at his own expense, carrying four cannon, and thirty men. He fell in with a large Spanish vessel of twenty guns, near the island of Cuba, and after an

Spaniards? What did they do? Next expedition? What of the buccaneers for more than twenty years? 9. Customs of the buccaneers? Mor-

obstinate struggle, he took it. The cargo was of immense value. While the pirates were rejoicing, three large Spanish vessels hove in sight, and gave them chase. They were soon overtaken, and finding it in vain to resist, surrendered to the Spaniards.

12. Two days after this, the vessels were separated by a storm, and the pirates were driven upon the shore. Bartholomew being recognized, was immediately taken by the inhabitants, and condemned to death. But for the purpose of keeping him safely, they put him in irons, and had him taken on board a ship, while they could prepare a gallows for his execution. He however freed himself from his fetters, killed the sentinel, and fastening two jugs tightly corked to his sides, let himself down into the water, and swam ashore.

13. He then secreted himself in a thick forest, and there he remained for three days, subsisting upon roots. He chose for his retreat the hollow of an old tree, from which he could see his enemies looking for him in the woods. After awhile he sallied forth, and proceeded by land to a town, about 100 miles distant, where there were some pirates. They supplied him with a boat and twenty men, with which he went back, and captured the same ship in which he had been kept prisoner. He met with many other adventures, but I have not room to detail them here.

14. Thus I have told you something of the Buccaneers. They displayed great courage, and gained immense sums of money, but it is remarkable, that their lives generally ended in misery and misfortune. They were indeed guilty of every vice, and conducted

with the utmost cruelty to those who fell into their hands. They were a scourge to the age in which they lived, and their memory can only excite abhorrence.

CHAP. LXXXII.

STORY OF COLUMBUS.

1. We have now finished our survey of the West Indies, and are therefore prepared to return to our own country. We must be on the look out for pirates, till we have passed the Bahamas; for a great many of these fierce people infest the seas in this neighborhood. They generally cruise about in small vessels, carrying a black flag, and seize upon such merchant ships as they meet with. They often kill the crews, and after robbing the vessels, cut holes in them and sink them.

2. The pirates have taken a great many vessels belonging to the United States, within a few years. Not long since, the government of our country sent some armed vessels against them. After cruising about a great while, one of the ships came across some of the pirates. The latter fled to one of the islands; here they were attacked by some sailors under the command of Captain Allen, a brave young officer, who had distinguished himself in the late war with England. He was killed in the skirmish, and the pirates, leaving their boats behind, escaped to the interior of the island.

3. While we are on our way to the United States, I will tell you the story of Christopher Columbus. I have mentioned his name frequently, and you will no doubt be curious to know

gan? 11. Story of Bartholomew? 14. Character of the buccaneers?

1. Pirates? Captain Allen? 3. Birth of Columbus? Give an account of his early life.

something more about him. This celebrated man was born at Genoa, in Italy, in the year 1435. He was brought up a sailor, and was very expert in managing boats and vessels upon the water. He made a great many short voyages in the Mediterranean Sea, and sailed to the northern seas of Europe, which was then deemed a remarkable enterprize.

4. After this, he returned to Italy, and engaged in the war against the Venetians and Turks. One day he was cruising in a vessel off the coast of Portugal, when he met with a Venetian ship; an engagement immediately followed, in which the sailors on both sides fought with the greatest spirit. At length Columbus was on the point of boarding the Venetian vessel, when his own took fire. In a moment, both ships were in flames. The blaze ran from sail to sail till the whole rigging, masts, spars, and ropes were involved in one sheet of flame.

5. The hulls of the vessels were soon on fire, and were now on the point of sinking. The sailors leapt into the sea, and Columbus among the rest. They were near six miles from land, and all were drowned except Columbus. He, with the greatest presence of mind, seized upon an oar, and resolved to exert himself to reach the land. He was a good swimmer, and partly supported by the oar, he kept himself afloat, and at length, on the point of fainting, came to the shore.

6. He was now in Portugal, and after recovering from his fatigue, he went to Lisbon the capital. Here he became acquainted with several Portuguese sailors, who were then the best

navigators in the world. You must know that at this time there were no large ships, and people were not accustomed to sail out fearlessly upon the broad ocean as now; nobody had ever crossed the great Atlantic, and the people of Europe, who had only sailed timidly along the shores, did not know that such a country as America existed.

7. The shape of the earth was at this time unknown; some persons supposed it flat, but nobody knew that it was round. But the art of navigation was rapidly advancing; the seamen were venturing farther into the deep, and an ardent desire to explore the unknown ocean was kindled. This curiosity had been greatly stimulated by the discovery, by the Portuguese, of Madeira and Porto Santa, lying to the northwest of Africa. It was at this point of time, that Columbus reached Lisbon, where he soon after married the daughter of a celebrated navigator, who was one of the discoverers of the islands above mentioned.

8. His imagination was captivated with the idea of seeing these places, and accordingly he went there. For several years, after this, he was engaged in carrying on a profitable trade from Madeira to the coast of Africa, the Azores, and Canaries. But during all this time, his mind was active and increasing in knowledge. Whatever he learnt, he always remembered, and never satisfied with the information he had gained, he constantly desired to know more.

9. At this time, the people of Europe had considerable trade with India, but no vessels ever having passed around the Cape of Good Hope, the people did not know the shape of Africa, nor did

at this time? 7. What discoveries had excited their curiosity? Who did Columbus marry? 8. Where did he go? What did he do for several

4. Describe the engagement with a Venetian ship. 5. How did Columbus save himself? 6. Where did he go? What of the people of Europe

they know that they could go from Europe to India by water. They therefore sent their goods across the Mediterranean to Egypt, whence they were taken by land to the Red Sea. Here they were transported on board vessels, which sailed through the straits of Babelmandel, and across the Indian ocean, to India. By the same route goods were returned to Europe.

10. This method of conducting commerce, was expensive and tedious; the people therefore were very anxious to find some way of going to India by sea. This great subject occupied the attention of all Europe, and Columbus, in particular, dwelt upon it with the most intense interest. He studied books, he consulted maps, and often while his little vessel was ploughing the sea, he would revolve in his mind all the facts which he had collected, relating to it.

11. At night, when the stars shone down upon his ship, floating like a speck on the bosom of the mighty ocean, he looked up, and mused with curious wonder upon the heavenly bodies. From these contemplations, his mind descended to the earth, and strove to solve the mysteries that involved it. Was it a vast plain, stretching out to a boundless extent? Or was it a globe, swung in the heavens, and revolving like a planet around the sun?

12. After a great deal of reflection, Columbus adopted this latter idea, and applying it to the question of reaching India by water, he concluded, that if he sailed across the Atlantic in a westerly direction, he should at length come to

years? 9. What of the trade with India? 10. How was it carried on? Why was it desirable to find a sea passage to India? Had anybody ever sailed around Africa? What subject interested Columbus very much? What did he do in regard to it? 12. At what conclusion did he fi-

that country. Full of this notion, he went to a learned physician in Florence, and consulted him upon the subject. This man perceived the force of his reasoning, and believing his views to be right, exhorted him to make a voyage for the purpose of ascertaining the fact. Strengthened by this counsel, Columbus resolved to enter upon his grand scheme, of sailing westward upon the Atlantic, to discover what might lie beyond it.

13. He immediately offered his plan to the government of Genoa, with a request that they would fit out a small fleet, in which he might make the desired voyage. But these men happened to be ignorant and stupid, and rejected the offer with contempt. He then applied to the court of Lisbon, who listened carefully to his scheme, and then meanly fitted out a vessel and sent it in a private manner with a view of anticipating Columbus in his great project. But the commander of the vessel was a cowardly fellow, and soon came back, having made no discovery.

14. Disgusted with this trick, Columbus set out for Madrid, the capital of Spain. The king who then reigned, was named Ferdinand, and his Queen, Isabella. Here he was favorably received, and his project was listened to with attention. But the counsellors of the king were narrow-minded men, and made very absurd objections to the project. One said it would take too long a time; another that Columbus could not be wiser than every body who had lived before him; and a third concluded that if the world was round,

nally arrive? Whom did he consult? 13. To whom did he first offer his project? How did they receive it? To whom did he next apply? How was he treated? 14. Whose assistance did he now solicit? What objections were made?

Columbus would find a constant descent on the other side of it, and either slip off, or at any rate, never get back.

15. Such shallow objections were made to the forcible arguments of Columbus; and as the most ignorant are usually the most obstinate, he found it impossible to change their opinion. Having spent five years in tedious endeavors, he at length received a positive refusal, and was about to leave the country and offer his project to England, when an unexpected change took place in his favor. Two of his friends made a final effort with the King and Queen, and representing his views with great force of reasoning, they at length consented to give him the desired assistance. Accordingly three small vessels, with ninety men, were fitted out, and on the 3d of August, 1492, Columbus, with his little fleet, set sail from Palos in Spain.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

STORY OF COLUMBUS.—CONTINUED.

1. The adventurers proceeded in the first place to the Canary Isles; these they left on the 6th of September, and sailing in a westerly direction, stretched forth upon the bosom of the unknown deep. They soon lost sight of land, and nothing could be seen but the skies above, and the level water spread out around them. They were going where no human being had ever been; they knew not what was before them. A solemn mystery hung over the sea, and as they advanced in their voyage, they could not tell what dangers they might meet with.

2. To a bold man, like Columbus, these things rendered the voyage in the highest degree interesting. But most of the sailors were ignorant and superstitious, and they began soon to be very much afraid. But Columbus reasoned with them, and persuaded them to continue the voyage.

3. Thus they proceeded for several weeks, constantly sailing in a westerly direction; but Columbus had great difficulty with his men. They were exceedingly alarmed at the idea of being at such a vast distance from home, upon the bosom of the sea; and he was obliged to use various arts to prevent their setting out to return. At length, their fears were so much excited, that both officers and men, on board the three vessels, positively refused to go any farther. They even thought of throwing Columbus overboard, and perhaps they would have executed this design, if he had not found means to pacify them. He proposed that they should go on for three days more, and if, by that time, they did not discover land, he promised to return. This was deemed a reasonable proposition, and they all agreed to it.

4. Accordingly they proceeded, and very soon they met with floating seaweed, and saw birds in the air. Some of these appeared to be weary, and settled upon the masts of the vessels. Here they remained all night, but in the morning they departed, and flew to the west. All these things made the sailors believe that land was near; and their hopes and expectations were soon raised to the highest pitch.

5. One night, as Columbus was standing upon the deck of his vessel, looking out upon the sea, he thought

15. What was the result of his application? When, and from what place did he sail? What of his fleet?

1. Describe the voyage across the Atlantic

he discovered a light. He mentioned it to some of the men, and they too thought they could see it. There was now no sleep on board the vessels; both sailors and officers were gathered upon the decks, or distributed among the rigging, straining their eyes to discover land. At length, it was two o'clock in the morning, when a man, stationed on the top of the mast in the forward vessel, exclaimed, 'Land! Land!' This was soon communicated to the others, and the most lively joy filled the breasts of all the seamen.

6. The morning came, and assured them that their hopes were realized. The shore lay before them in the distance, and the sun shone down upon it, seeming in their eyes to give it an aspect of peculiar beauty. Deeply affected with gratitude to that Being who had borne them safely over the waves, and crowned their bold adventure with success, they knelt down, and offered to Heaven their warmest expressions of thanksgiving.

7. Having approached pretty near the shore, Columbus and some of his officers entered a boat, and went toward the land. They perceived that it was covered with woods, diversified by hills and valleys, and watered by rivers. As they came near, they saw a multitude of people almost naked and of a red color, collected upon the shore. These were attracted by the strange spectacle before them. They had never seen vessels or white men before; and when the Spaniards approached the island with colors flying, and amid bursts of martial music, their astonishment knew no bounds.

8. At length, the boat reached the shore. Columbus, richly dressed, and

having a drawn sword in his hand, first sprang from the boat, and set his foot upon the earth. His companions followed, and, kneeling down, kissed the



Columbus taking Possession of the Island.

ground, to express their joy and gratitude. The Spaniards now erected a cross, before which they performed religious worship, and Columbus then took possession of the country, in the name of the King and Queen of Spain. These events took place on the 11th of October, 1492. The island they discovered, was one of the Bahamas, now called Cat Island, as I have before told you. It was called Guanahani by the natives, but Columbus gave it the appellation of St Salvador.

9. The Spaniards now began to examine the place they had discovered. They found it to be quite fertile, but the animals, trees, and plants were such as they had never seen in Europe. The people attracted their chief attention. These were of a copper color, nearly naked, and the men had no beards. Their hair was decorated with feathers, and shells, and gold plates were suspended from their ears and noses. They received the Spaniards with the greatest respect, and seemed to consider them a superior race of beings.

5. Describe the discovery of land. 8. Describe the landing of the Spaniards. Describe

the picture. Names of the island first discovered by Columbus? When did this discovery take

They looked with amazement upon the ships, and when they saw a cannon fired, they were struck with fear and wonder.

10. At night, some of the Indians went to the vessels, and in the morning, Columbus returned with them to the island. He now asked the people where they obtained the gold, which they used for ornaments. In reply, they pointed to the south, and intimated that there was a large island there, where there was a great deal of gold. Columbus immediately determined to go there, and taking seven of the Indians as guides, he set off with the fleet.

11. After touching at two or three islands, he at length reached Cuba, as I have told you at page 165. Having remained here some time, and having had several interviews with the natives, he proceeded to Hayti, as related at page 166. I need not repeat what happened to him there, for I have already told you about it. Leaving thirtyeight of his men on the island, he set out on his return; and after many dangers he reached Palos, on the 15th of May, 1493, after an absence of seven months, and eleven days.

12. He was received with the greatest honor by the people; and as he travelled across the country to visit the King and Queen, and tell them of his discovery, the inhabitants flocked to see him with the most eager curiosity. When he came to the city of Barcelona, where the king resided, a great ceremony

took place. A grand procession was formed in the following manner.

13. First came the Indians that Columbus had brought with him, dressed in the manner of their country; after them was carried all the gold that had been procured by the expedition; next followed some persons bearing chests of pepper, bales of cotton, parquets, stuffed birds, and quadrupeds, indian corn, cane poles twentyfive feet long, and many other curious things, which had been brought from the new world. Lastly came Columbus.

14. The whole procession moved through the city to a public square, where the King and Queen were seated on a splendid throne. Here they received Columbus with the greatest marks of honor. He then gave an account of his voyage to the King and Queen, and those around him. They listened with breathless attention, for Columbus was an eloquent man, and his story was one of the deepest interest.

15. The king was so much delighted that he ordered a new expedition to be immediately fitted out, and gave the command of it to Columbus. But to make sure of the discoveries that might be made, he sent to the Pope of Rome, requesting a grant of all the land west of the Atlantic Ocean. With this request the Pope complied, and on the 25th of September, the fleet, consisting of seventeen vessels, and 1500 men, set sail from the port of Cadiz.

place? 9. What of the country? The people?
11. Where did Columbus now go?

N. B. The pupil will find answers to the following questions at pages 165, 168. When did Columbus discover Cuba? What of the natives? Their manner of living? Religious opinions? What did an old man say to Columbus? 11. Where did C. go after leaving Cuba?

N. B. The pupil will find answers to the fol-

lowing questions at page 166. When did C. discover Hayti? What accident happened to him there? What of the people? 11. How many of his men did Columbus leave in Hayti? When did he arrive in Spain? 12. How was he treated by the people? What took place at Barcelona? 15. What of a new expedition? What of the Pope? Of how many men and ships did the new fleet consist? When did it sail? 16. How

16. I have not room to tell you the whole history of Columbus. It is enough to say that he made four voyages to America, including the first. He discovered many of the West India islands, and during his last voyage, touched upon the continent.

17. Many adventurers now came to America, and among the rest, there was an Italian, called Americus Vesputius. Having sailed along the coast and ascertained the existence of the continent, he returned to Spain and gave an account of his discoveries. In consequence of this, his name was given to the new world.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

GENERAL VIEW OF AMERICA.

1. It is now time for us to return to our native country. We have taken a survey of the several nations of America, yet we have seen no place so agreeable as our own home. In the United States, the people are certainly happier than in any other part of this Western Hemisphere. They are more intelligent, have more liberty, possess more of the comforts of life, and are more virtuous than in any of the countries we have seen.

2. Before we part, I wish to direct your attention to a few interesting topics. If you will look at the frontispiece of this book, you will see a picture which represents one half of the globe. The greater part of its surface is covered by water, upon which vessels are sailing in various directions. In the middle you will observe the Continent of America. Its length from Melville Island to Cape Horn, is near 9000 miles, and it contains about 15,000,000 of square miles. The United States occupy more than one eighth part of the whole. America occupies one tenth part of the surface of the globe, and nearly one third part of all the land on the globe.

3. This Continent is remarkable for its lakes, its rivers and its mountains. Lake Superior is the largest lake of fresh water in the world. The St. Lawrence, the Mississippi, the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the La Plata, are all of them mighty rivers, and several of them surpass all the rivers of the Eastern Continent. The Amazon alone, with its branches, spreads over a country equal to Europe in extent.

4. The Andes, with the Cordilleras and Rocky Mountains, constitute the longest chain of mountains in the universe; being nearly 11,000 miles in length, including its windings. Many of their tops are glittering with mantles of snow; some of them pour forth torrents of fire and melted lava; and deep in their bowels are immense treasures of gold, silver and other metals. The population of America is small, compared with its extent; I suppose it is not more than 40,000,000. These are but about one twentieth part of the inhabitants on the globe; the empire of Russia alone, contains as many people; and Great Britain has more than half as many.

5. It is not 350 years, since the people of Europe, Asia and Africa, were totally ignorant of the existence of this vast Continent. Yet the lakes, the mountains, the rivers, and the plains had existed for ages. The sun had shone upon them by day, and the moon by night; summer had visited the land with flowers and fruits, and winter had covered it with snow. The earthquake had shaken the hills, and the whirlwind had rent the forest; and all the great works of nature had gone on from the Creation, though man was not there to witness them.

6. At what time, or from what quarter, the Indians came to America it is impossible to tell. It is generally supposed, that two or three thousand years ago, some small tribes came from the north of Asia across Bhering's Straits, and thus gradually peopled the whole continent.

But this is mere conjecture; and their entire history from their first arrival in the country, down to the discovery of America is involved in mystery.

7. In various parts of the country, there are mounds evidently raised by men many hundred years ago. It is certain they were not constructed by the wandering tribes who inhabited the country when our forefathers came here; but who raised them, how long they have existed, and what is their story, we cannot tell. It is probable that great events have happened—that empires have risen, flourished and gone to decay,—during the many ages over which time has thrown an everlasting oblivion.

8. It appears that whole races of animals have lived in America, of which nothing remains but their bones. The gigantic Mastodon which was four times as large as an Elephant, once roamed in great numbers, through the forests, and other animals, as well as trees and plants now unknown, were common in the country. We must recollect, that from the creation, to the year 1492, a period of more than 5000 years, all that took place upon this vast continent is hidden from the view, and only known to that Being who made it.

9. You will recollect from the account I have given you, that the Spaniards were not only the first discoverers of America, but that they first planted colonies here. The Pope granted to them all lands they might discover in the new continent, and by virtue of this grant, they took possession of whatever they wanted. Either disregarding the rights of the Indians, or supposing they had none, they made war upon them, slew them by millions, reduced the survivors to slavery, took possession of their lands, settled upon them, and claimed them as their own. In this way Mexico, Guatimala, Colombia, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, the United Provinces and several of the West India islands were subdued and peopled by the Spaniards; in all these countries, the Spanish language is now chiefly spoken, and the manners and customs of the people resemble those of Spain.

10. Brazil, you will recollect, was settled by the Portuguese, who conducted toward the natives nearly in the same way, as the Spaniards had done. The common language in Brazil, is Portuguese, and the customs of the people are similar to those of Portugal. The Catholic religion prevails throughout all the countries settled by the Spaniards and Portuguese, and here there are multitudes of negro slaves belonging to the white people, and many Indians, who cultivate the land and submit to the government.

11. It was about 100 years after the Spaniards had established colonies in America, that the English began to make settlements here. These were made by private adventurers on their own account, and not by the aid or authority of the government, as was the case with the Spanish colonies. The English colonists did not proceed to conquer the savages; on the contrary, they bought their lands, made treaties with them, and never presumed to make war upon them, but for the purpose of self defence. It is remarkable however, that the natives always disappeared as the English settlements advanced; while in the Spanish and Portuguese colonies, the white people intermarried with them and the two races thus became mixed. Many of the Indians too, remained, and adopted the habits of civilised life.

12. The French were less enterprising, than either the English, Portuguese, or Spanish. Their settlements were begun at a late date, and were chiefly confined to the borders of the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi. Most of these they were compelled to relinquish to the English, in 1763. Great Britain lost the best of her American colonies twenty years after; and Spain and Portugal within the last twenty years, have parted with all their territories on this Continent.

How many voyages did Columbus make? What of his discoveries?
1. Why is this continent called America? 2. Length of America?

Extent? 3. Lakes? Rivers? 4. Mountains? Population? 6. In
dians? 9. Spaniards? 10. Portuguese? 11. English? 12. French?

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE AND INDEX.

Note.—The author would recommend that the pupil be examined in this table somewhat in the following manner. What remarkable events occurred from 1830 to 1820? From 1820 to 1810? &c.

1830 Death of Bolivar,	148	1783 Close of the revolutionary war,	118
1830 Centennial celebration at Boston,	19	1783 Treaty of peace between England and the U. S.	118
1829 Andrew Jackson becomes President of the United States,	96	1781 Engagements in North and South Carolina,	117
1826 La Fayette visits America,	121	1781 The British under Arnold take Fort Griswold, and burn New London,	118
1825 John Q. Adams becomes President,	96	1781 Surrender of Lord Cornwallis,	118
— Bolivia becomes independent,	154	1780 Charleston surrendered to the British,	117
1825 Constitution of Bolivia formed,	154	1780 Count Rochambeau joins Washington with 6000 French troops,	117
1825 Constitution of Peru formed,	153	1780 Treachery of Arnold,	117
1823 Peace between Spain and the United Provinces,	160	1780 Execution of Andre,	117
1823 Brazil becomes independent,	162	1780 Nashville founded,	87
1823 Constitution of Mexico formed,	142	1780 Battle of Camden,	62
1821 John VI. leaves Brazil, and returns to Lisbon,	162	1779 Savannah taken by the English,	116
1821 Gen. San Martin takes possession of Lima,	153	1779 Gen. Tryon burns Fairfield and Norwalk in Connecticut, and plunders New Haven,	116
1821 First Congress meets in Colombia,	148	1779 Gen. Sullivan destroys the Indian villages in the State of New York,	116
1821 Guatemala becomes independent,	143	1778 Battle of Monmouth,	57
1821 Missouri becomes a state,	89	1778 The French acknowledge the independence of the colonies,	114
1820 Mexico becomes independent,	142	1778 Massacre at Wyoming,	116
1820 Maine becomes a state,	12	1778 Gen. Clarke lays the Indian country waste in Kentucky,	88
1819 Florida relinquished to the U. States,	90	1777 Surrender of Burgoyne,	114
1819 Bolivar declared the Liberator of Colombia,	148	1777 La Fayette comes to America,	114
1819 New Granada and Venezuela are united and called the Republic of Colombia,	148	1777 Battle of Princeton,	113
1819 Alabama becomes a state,	83	1777 Battle of Bennington,	16
1818 Illinois becomes a state,	89	1776 Washington crosses the Delaware and takes 900 Hessians,	113
1817 James Munroe becomes President,	96	1776 New York taken by the British,	113
— Mississippi becomes a state,	83	1776 Declaration of Independence,	113
1817 Chili becomes independent,	155	1776 The British troops evacuate Boston,	113
1817 Munroe makes a tour through the U. States,	121	1775 Two expeditions sent against Canada,	112
1816 Indiana becomes a state,	89	1775 Washington appointed Commander in Chief,	112
1816 Sufferings in New England from the cold season,	88	1775 Battle of Bunker Hill,	111
1815 Battle of New Orleans,	84	1775 Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken by the Americans,	110
1814 Battle on Lake Champlain,	16	1775 Battle of Lexington,	109
1814 Battle at North Point,	64	1774 Boston Port Bill passed,	106
1814 City of Washington burnt,	65	1773 Cargoes of tea destroyed at Boston,	106
1812 Constitution founded in Venezuela,	147	1773 First settlement in Kentucky,	88
1812 Murder of the people of Quito by troops under a catholic bishop,	147	1770 Disturbances in Boston,	104
1812 Louisiana becomes a state,	85	1769 Daniel Boone goes to Kentucky,	87
1812 The United States declare war against Great Britain,	120	1765 First permanent settlement in Tennessee,	87
1811 Venezuela declared independent,	147	1764 Missouri settled by the French,	89
1810 United Provinces become independent,	160	1763 Michigan Terr. ceded to the English,	90
1809 Madison becomes President,	96	1763 Indiana and Illinois ceded to Great Britain,	89
1806 The people of Colombia attempt to throw off the Spanish yoke,	146	1763 Cuba relinquished by the British to Spain,	136
1806 Royal family of Portugal remove to Brazil,	162	1763 Mississippi ceded to Great Britain,	83
1806 City of Buenos Ayres taken by the British,	160	1762 Cuba taken by the British,	166
1803 Jefferson purchases Louisiana,	85	1760 Montreal taken by the English,	103
1803 The French evacuate Hayti,	167	1759 Capture of Quebec,	103
1802 Ohio becomes a state,	89	1759 Ticonderoga, Niagara, and Crown Point taken by the English,	102
1801 Thomas Jefferson becomes President,	96	1758 Fort Frontenac taken,	101
1801 Hayti declared independent,	167	1758 Fort Du Quesne taken by Gen. Forbes,	101
1800 Congress removes to the city of Washington,	120	1758 Louisburg taken by Lord Amherst,	101
1799 Death of Washington,	68	1757 Capture of Fort William Henry by the French,	100
1797 John Adams becomes President,	96	1755 Expedition against Crown Point,	99
1796 Tennessee becomes a state,	87	1755 Expedition against Niagara,	99
1795 Treaty of peace with the Indians in Ohio,	88	1755 Braddock's defeat,	99
1795 War with the <i>maroons</i> in Jamaica,	167	1755 Old French war begins,	97
1792 Kentucky becomes a state,	87	1754 Washington attacks the French near Fort Du Quesne,	98
1791 Vermont joins the Union,	17	1754 First settlement in Tennessee,	87
1790 District of Columbia ceded to the U. States,	120	1754 The colony of Georgia given up to the king,	80
1790 Rhode Island joins the Union,	22	1749 Halifax founded,	123
1784 New Brunswick becomes a distinct province,	123	1748 Catholic priests convert the Hurons in Michigan Territory,	90
1789 Disturbances in Hayti,	166	1748 Peace between England and France,	40
1789 Washington becomes President,	96		
1789 The Federal Constitution goes into operation,	96		
1789 Tennessee ceded to the U. States,	87		
1788 First settlement in Ohio,	88		
1783 Michigan Terr. ceded to the U. States.	90		
1783 Eruption of Skaptar Yokul in Iceland	128		

1747 Lima and Callao destroyed by an earthquake,	153	1645 Rebellion in Maryland,	66
1745 Saratoga burnt by the Indians,	55	1643 The Dutch make war on the Canadians,	54
1744 King George's war begins,	39	1637 Indians attack Saybrook and Wethersfield	31
1744 Louisburg taken,	40	1635 Hartford settled,	25
1743 George Clinton Governor of New York,	55	1636 Settlement of Rhode Island,	21
1736 Persecution of Negroes in New York,	55	1635 Ann Hutchinson preaches in Massachusetts,	30
1735 Settlers come to Georgia,	80	1635 Windsor and Wethersfield settled,	25
1733 Emigrants come to Georgia,	80	1634 English and French settle at Guiana,	65
1732 Savannah founded,	79	1634 Settlement of Maryland,	65
1729 The two Carolinas are separated,	77	1633 Settlement of Connecticut	25
1724 Fort Dummer built,	17	1631 Settlement of Portsmouth,	14
1722 Indian war with the colonies in Maine, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts,	39	1630 Buccaneers established at Tortuga and Hispaniola,	170
1722 Hayti is divided between France and Spain,	166	1630 Settlement of Boston, Charlestown, and Dorchester,	20
1722 Dreadful hurricane at Jamaica,	167	1628 First permanent settlement in Maine,	12
1721 Some Danes settle in Greenland,	127	1627 Settlement of Delaware,	62
1720 British settlement in the Bahamas,	169	1624 Settlement of New Jersey,	57
1718 Death of Penn,	61	1623 Settlement of New Hampshire,	14
1717 New Orleans founded,	85	1622 Slaughter of the colonists in Virginia,	74
1716 Delaware restored to Lord Baltimore,	66	1620 Settlement of Plymouth,	20
1716 Settlement of Natches,	83	1619 Slaves brought to Jamestown,	73
1713 Peace between England and France,	39	1614 Settlement of Albany and New York,	49
1713 Tuscaroras join the Five Nations,	77	1611 New settlers arrive at Virginia,	73
1710 German settlements in North Carolina,	76	1609 Hudson's discovery of the North River,	49
1707 Settlements at Pamlico Sound,	76	1609 Emigrants go from London to Virginia	72
1705 Selkirk left on the island of Juan Fernandez,	156	1608 Québec founded,	123
1704 Attack on Deerfield,	38	1607 Settlement in Maine,	11
1702 New Jersey surrendered to Queen Anne,	57	1607 Settlement of Jamestown,	69
1702 Queen Anne's war begins,	38	1600 Settlement on the island of Newfoundland,	123
1701 New charter of Pennsylvania,	61	1595 Sir Walter Raleigh visits Guiana,	164
1699 Penn's second visit to America,	61	1586 Jesuits convert the Indians in Buenos Ayres,	159
1699 Settlement at Iberville,	85	1570 St. Augustine founded by the Spaniards,	90
1698 Earl of Bellamont Governor of New York,	54	1562 Florida settled by French Protestants,	90
1696 Indian attack on Haverhill,	37	1553 Battle between Valdivia and the Indians in Chili,	155
1692 Supposed witchcraft at Salem,	36	1549 St. Salvador founded,	162
1692 Jamaica and Port Royal overwhelmed by an earthquake,	167	1548 Jews settle in Brazil,	162
1691 Death of Governor Slaughter,	54	1545 Silver mine discovered in Potosi,	154
1691 Peter Schuyler attacks the French,	54	1541 Death of Pizarro,	153
1690 Schenectady burnt,	53	1540 Don Alvarez Governor of the United Provinces,	159
1689 Indian attack on Dover,	14	1540 Valdivia goes with an army into Chili,	155
1689 William III. governs Delaware.	66	1539 Ferdinand De Soto goes to Mississippi,	83
1686 Sir Edward Andross Governor of New England,	35	1538 Almagro attacks the Indians in Chili,	155
1684 Penn returns to England,	60	1535 City of Buenos Ayres founded,	159
1683 De Salle names the country on both sides of the Mississippi, Louisiana,	83	1533 Lima founded by Pizarro,	153
1682 William Penn purchases Delaware	63	1531 Pizarro's second expedition to Peru,	146
1682 Penn's first visit to America,	60	1526 Sebastian Cabot explores the La Plata,	159
1681 Settlement of Pennsylvania,	60	1525 Pizarro's first expedition to Peru,	149
1678 Close of Philip's war,	34	1524 City of Guatemala founded,	143
1676 Death of Lord Baltimore,	56	1519 Patagonia discovered by Magellan,	157
1676 Division of New Jersey,	57	1518 The Spaniards first hear of Mexico,	132
1675 Beginning of Philip's war,	32	1518 Cortez sets out for the conquest of Mexico,	132
1675 Attack on Swanzey,	32	1516 United Provinces discovered,	159
1674 British give up Guiana to the Dutch,	165	1511 Velasquez conquers the Indians in Cuba,	166
1674 Colony of New York restored to the English,	50	1504 Vasco Nunes lands in Guiana,	164
1673 New York taken by the Dutch,	50	1500 Discovery of Brazil,	161
1670 Settlement of Charleston,	76	1498 Venezuela discovered by Columbus,	146
1667 Guiana taken by the Dutch,	165	1498 Guiana discovered by Columbus,	164
1665 Elizabethtown settled,	57	1497 Sebastian Cabot discovers the coast of Labrador,	123
1664 Tennessee granted to Lord Clarendon,	87	1496 St. Domingo founded by Columbus,	166
1664 Delaware comes into the hands of the English,	57	1494 Jamaica discovered by Columbus,	167
1664 New York surrenders to the d. of York,	50	1493 Porto Rico discovered by Columbus,	167
1664 New Jersey comes into the hands of the British,	57	1492 Hayti discovered by Columbus,	166
1663 North Carolina granted to Lord Clarendon,	76	1492 Cuba discovered by Columbus,	165
1656 First Quakers in America,	42	1435 Birth of Columbus,	173
1655 Peter Stuyvesant captures the Swedish settlement in Delaware,	62	1350 A pestilence called the Black Death destroys the colony in Greenland,	127
1655 The English take Jamaica,	167	1023 Greenland becomes subject to Denmark,	127
1650 Persecution of the Baptists in New England,	42	982 Discovery and settlement of Greenland,	127
1650 North Carolina settled,	75	874 Iceland settled by Norwegians,	129
1650 Guiana taken under the protection of Great Britain,	165	860 Iceland discovered by a Norwegian pirate,	129
1646 Battle of Horseneck	50		

6 Longitude East 7 from Washington 8

10



Pop. 399,462... Sq. ^r M. 32,000.

MAINE

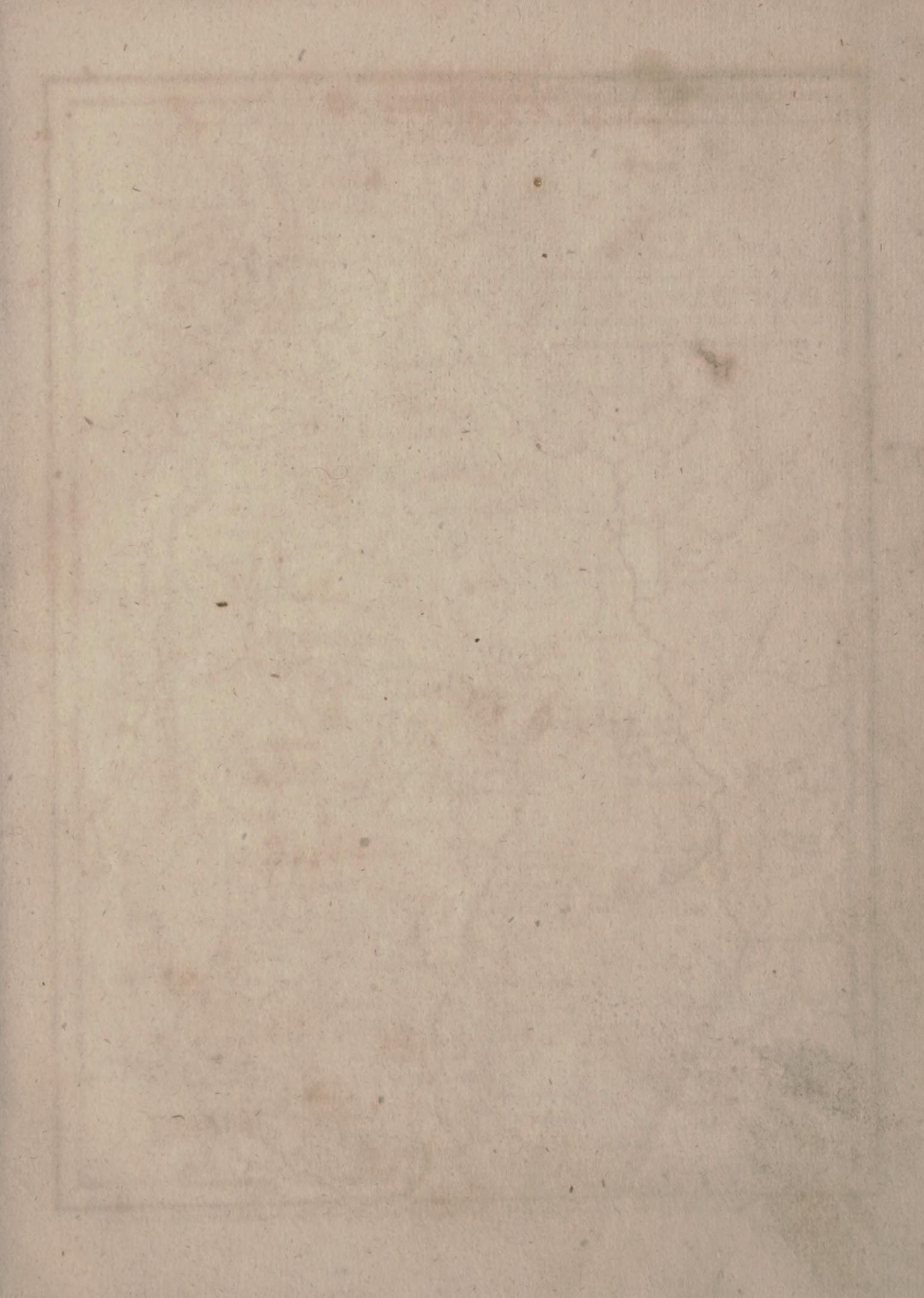
Scale.
12 24 36 48 60 Miles.

62 Longitude W. from 68 Greenwich

67 C. Rowton, Sc.

Entered according to act of Congress on this 9th day of March by S. G. Goodrich of Massachusetts.





Longitude East 5 from Washington

CANADA

45

45

Pop. 269,533. Sq. M. 9,500.

NEW HAMPSHIRE

Scale

5 10 20 30 40 Miles

Moosetocmaguntic L.

T
N
M
F
V

E
N
I
M

44

44

43

43

Longitude West 72 from Greenwich

G. Boynton Sc.

Entered according to act of Congress on the 9th day of March by S. G. Goodrich of Massachusetts.



4

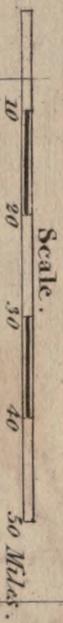
5 Longitude East from Washington

6



MASSACHUSETTS

Pop. 610,014. Sq. M. 7,500.



73 Longitude West from Greenwich 72

71

Entered according to act of Congress on the 9th day of March by S. G. Bowditch of Massachusetts.

G. Bowditch sculp.

5 1/2 East from Washington

MASSACHUSETTS

12

12

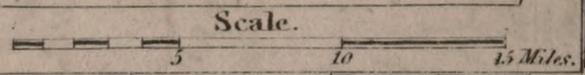
C O N N E C T I C U T

M A S S A C H U S E T T S



Pop. 97, 216. Sq. M. 1,300.

RHODE ISLAND



7 1/2 West from Greenwich

G. Boynton Sc.

Block I^d

Entered according to act of Congress on this 9th day of March by S. G. Goodrich of Massachusetts



Longitude West from Greenwich 71°

Entered according to act of Congress on this 20th day of March by S.G. Goodrich of Massachusetts

C. Boynton Sc.

Longitude East from Washington

8

10

48

48



Distance from Boston.

Portland	112 Miles
Augusta	177
Concord N.H.	68
Montpelier	160
Providence	40
Northampton	94
Hartford	100
Portsmouth	62

NEW-ENGLAND

Scale.
10 20 40 60 Miles.

Pop. 1,954,715. Sq. M. 65,300.

Longitude West from 69 Greenwich

C. Boynton Sc.

Entered according to act of Congress on this 5th day of March by S. C. Goodrich of Massachusetts.



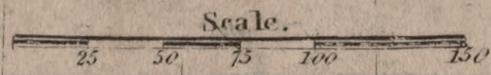
3 Long West 2 1 0 1 Longitude 2 East from 3 Washington

Distance from N. York	
Boston	210 M.
Albany	160
Buffalo	450
Philadelphia	387
Pittsburg	387
Baltimore	190



	Pop.	Sq. M.
N. York	1,234,196	46,000
Delaware	16,732	2,100
Pennsylvania	1,350,000	46,000
N. Jersey	377,719	8,000
Maryland	446,913	11,000
Middle States	4,125,927	113,100

MIDDLE STATES



80 Longitude 79 West from 78 Greenwich 77 76 75 74

Entered according to act of Congress on the 9th day of March by S. G. Goodrich of Massachusetts. G. Boynton Sc.



State	Pop.	sq. M.
Virginia	1,197,000	64,000
Kentucky	738,470	48,000
Indiana	581,458	28,000
Illinois	518,337	62,000
Alabama	302,782	46,000
Mississippi	129,000	46,000
Louisiana	276,233	48,000

SOUTHERN STATES

Scale.
30 100 200

Entered according to act of Congress on the 27th day of March by S. C. Goodrich of Massachusetts

G. Boynton Sc.

15 Long. W. from Washington

10

15 Long. E. from Washington

30
SABINE R.
Red R.
Natchez R.
Pensacola R.
Yazoo R.
Black R.
Alabama R.
Catahouchee R.
Flint R.
Savannah R.
St. Johns R.
St. Augustine R.
Gulf of Mexico

35
MISSISSIPPI R.
KASKASKIA R.
WABASH R.
OHIO R.
GREEN R.
KENTUCKY R.
CUMBERLAND R.
Tennessee R.
Kentucky R.
Big Sandy R.
C. Kanawha R.
Monongahela R.

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

ARKANSAS
Part of
TERRITORY
CHICKSAWAS
HAMILTON
Blountsville
Huntsville
Blountsville
Athens
Abbeville
Augusta
Savannah
Spartanburg
Charleston
Columbia
Spartanburg
Newburn
Hatteras

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

30
SABINE R.
Red R.
Natchez R.
Pensacola R.
Yazoo R.
Black R.
Alabama R.
Catahouchee R.
Flint R.
Savannah R.
St. Johns R.
St. Augustine R.
Gulf of Mexico

35
MISSISSIPPI R.
KASKASKIA R.
WABASH R.
OHIO R.
GREEN R.
KENTUCKY R.
CUMBERLAND R.
Tennessee R.
Kentucky R.
Big Sandy R.
C. Kanawha R.
Monongahela R.

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

ARKANSAS
Part of
TERRITORY
CHICKSAWAS
HAMILTON
Blountsville
Huntsville
Blountsville
Athens
Abbeville
Augusta
Savannah
Spartanburg
Charleston
Columbia
Spartanburg
Newburn
Hatteras

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

MISSISSIPPI
Part of
MISSOURI
Part of
ILLINOIS
Part of
INDIANA
Part of
OHIO
Part of

WESTERN STATES

Scale.

25 50 100 Miles

Longitude W. from Washington

10

8

6

4



Entered according to act of Congress on the 9th day of March, by S. G. Goodrich of Mass.

F. B. WHITT, S. C.



MEXICO, GUATEMALA & WEST INDIES.

Scale
 0 100 200 300 400 500 Miles



Entered according to act of Congress on the 9th day of March by S. C. Goodrich of Mass.

G. BOYLTON Sc.



AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS

AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS

Wright

Wright



ENTERTAINING AND USEFUL

FOR

CHILDREN AND YOUTH,

ILLUSTRATED BY MANY ENGRAVINGS.

FOR SALE BY

RICHARDSON, LORD, AND HOLBROOK.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 028 152 145 7

1. Peter Parley's Tales of the Sea.
2. Peter Parley's Tales of the islands in the Pacific Ocean
3. Peter Parley's Tales of remarkable animals, Quadrupeds, Birds, Fishes, and Insects.
4. Peter Parley's Present, with 220 engravings.
5. Tales of Travels west of the Mississippi, containing an account of the adventures of Lewis and Clark, Major Long and Jewett, with descriptions of many tribes of Indians, and the most interesting animals in the western regions of the United States.
6. Tales of Travels in Central Africa containing an account of Denham and Clapperton's expeditions, Parks' travels, Caillie's visit to Timbuctoo, &c. &c.
7. Tales of Travels in the North of Europe, Lapland, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Russia, and Poland.

☞ The three preceding volumes are a part of a series of entertaining works, edited by Solomon Bell, giving an account of the most interesting things to be found in the best books of Modern Travellers.

8. The Story of the American Revolution, illustrated by tales, sketches, and anecdotes.
9. Tales, Sketches, Anecdotes, and Adventures, drawn from the early History of New-England. *In press.*
10. Tales, Sketches, Anecdotes, and Adventures, drawn from the early History of the Southern States. *In press.*

☞ These three vols. are part of a series of Entertaining American Histories, edited by Lambert Lilly; they are designed to take the place of Fictitious Tales, and to answer as reading books for children.